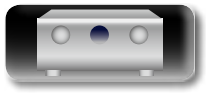
marantz®

AV Pre Tuner

AV7701

Owner's Manual



❑ SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN

CAUTION:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

Hot surface mark

CAUTION:
HOT SURFACE. DO NOT TOUCH.
The top surface over the internal heat sink may become hot when operating this product continuously.
Do not touch hot areas, especially around the "Hot surface mark" and the top panel.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings.
   Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.

13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
15. Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

CAUTION:
To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet.
The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION
Product Name: AV Pre Tuner
Model Number: AV7701
This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Marantz America, LLC.
(a D&M Holdings Company)
100 Corporate Drive,
Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.
Tel. 201-762-6500

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. IMPORTANT
When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

4. NOTE
This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

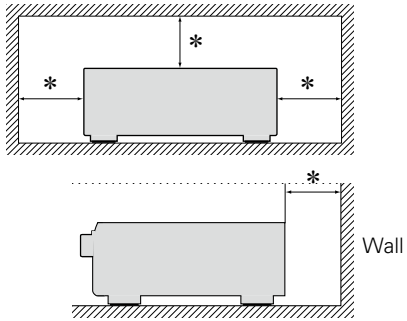
For Canadian customers:
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

❑ NOTES ON USE

WARNINGS

- Avoid high temperatures.
  Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack.
- Handle the power cord carefully.
  Hold the plug when unplugging the cord.
- Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust.
- Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time.
- Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.
- Do not let foreign objects into the unit.
- Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit.
- Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way.
- Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains.
- Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit.
- Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids.
- Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit.
- Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands.
- When the switch is in the OFF (STANDBY) position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS.
- The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible.
- Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.

❑ CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION



* **For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.**
- More than 12 in. (0.3 m) is recommended.
- Do not place any other equipment on this unit.

Getting started

Thank you for purchasing this marantz product. To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.
After reading them, be sure to keep them for future reference.

Contents

Getting started 1
- Accessories 2
- Features 2
- Cautions on handling 3

Basic version 4

Connections 5
- Important information 5
- Connecting an HDMI-compatible device 8
- Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device 13
- Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector 25
- Power amp 26
- Connecting to a home network (LAN) 27
- Connecting the power cord 28

Setup 29
- Set up speakers (Audyssey® Setup) 29
- Making the network settings (Network) 35

Playback (Basic operation) 36
- Important information 36
- Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player 37
- Playing Super Audio CD 37
- Playing a CD player 38
- Playing an iPod 39
- Playing a USB memory device 42
- Listening to HD Radio stations 45

Network contents 54
- Listening to internet radio 54
- Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS 57
- Using online services 61
- Convenient functions 71
- AirPlay function 75

Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) 77
- Selecting a listening mode 77

Advanced version 83

Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection) 84
- Install 84
- Connect 86
- Set up speakers 88

Connections (Advanced connection) 90
- Connecting the REMOTE CONTROL connectors 90
- Connecting an external control device 91

Playback (Advanced operation) 92
- HDMI control function 92
- Sleep timer function 94
- Web control function 95
- Dual backup memory function 97
- Panel lock function 97
- Remote lock function 98
- Switches light illumination on/off 99
- Various memory functions 99

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room) 100
- Audio output 100
- Video output 101
- Playback 102
- Sleep timer function 102

How to make detailed settings 103
- Menu map 103
- Examples of menu screen displays 105
- Examples of menu and front display 106
- Inputting characters 107
- Audio 108
- Video 115
- Inputs 121
- Speakers 126
- Network 130
- General 134

Operating external devices with the remote control 140
- Registering preset codes 140
- Operating external devices 143
- Operating learn function 146
- Setting the back light 148
- Specifying the zone used with the main remote control unit 148

Informations 149

Part names and functions 150
- Front panel 150
- Display 152
- Rear panel 154
- Remote control unit 155

Other information 157
- Trademark information 157
- Surround 158
- Relationship between video signals and monitor output 164
- Explanation of terms 166

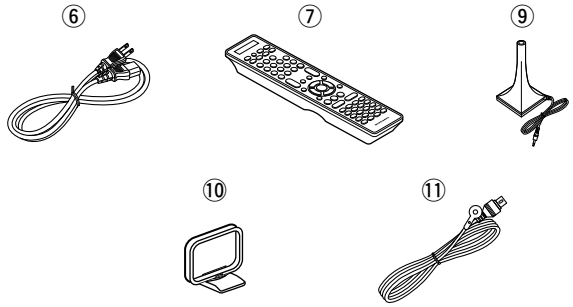
Troubleshooting 169
- Resetting the microprocessor 173

Specifications 174

Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

① Getting Started	1
② CD-ROM (Owner's manual)	1
③ Safety Instructions	1
④ Warranty card (for USA)	1
⑤ Warranty card (for CANADA)	1
⑥ Power cord	1
⑦ Remote control unit (RC016SR)	1
⑧ R03/AAA batteries	2
⑨ Setup microphone (ACM1HB)	1
⑩ AM loop antenna	1
⑪ FM indoor antenna	1



Features

Current feedback amplifier

This unit uses a high-speed current feedback amplifier circuit for its preamplifier so that signals from a Blu-ray Disc player and other equipment that support high-definition audio formats can be amplified with high fidelity. The high-speed current feedback amplifier also reproduces a natural sound space.

Digital video processor up-scales analog video signals (SD resolution) to 4K

This unit is equipped with the 4K video upscaling function, which allows for outputting analogue or SD (standard video quality) video to HDMI at 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels). This enables the unit and a TV connected with a single HDMI cable and any video source to be reproduced precisely with HD level of quality.

Equipped with "Hybrid PLL Jitter Reducer" capable of reducing jitter and phase noise that negatively affect sound quality

"Hybrid PLL Jitter Reducer" provided with this unit improves the sound localization, reproducing a natural sound field.

Equipped with a Multi-Zone Function 3 source, 3 zone output (incl.HDMI output for ZONE2)

This unit is equipped with a multi-zone function, so you can enjoy separate sound sources in three rooms including MAIN ZONE. Furthermore, this unit is equipped with an HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, so you can play back in ZONE2 a video that is different from the one played back in MAIN ZONE.

7.2 ch XLR Balanced Output

This unit is equipped with balanced output connectors that are insusceptible to external noise.
It is possible to achieve audio transmission of higher quality by connecting this unit to a power amplifier equipped with a balanced input connector.

Supports internet radio, music, and photograph streaming

Supports AirPlay® (☞page 75)

You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet radio, playing the audio files stored on your PC, and displaying on a TV the photographs stored on your PC.
This unit also supports AirPlay that lets you stream your music library from an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch or iTunes.

Compatible with "marantz Remote App" for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone*1 or Android smartphone

"marantz Remote App" is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPad, iPhone, Android smartphone or Android tablet such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

*1 Download "marantz Remote App" from iTunes® App Store. The unit needs to be connected to a LAN and the iPhone/iPod touch needs to be connected to the same network by Wi-Fi (wireless LAN).

"Setup Assistant", providing easy-to-follow setup instructions

First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

☞ See overleaf

Easy to use, Graphical User Interface
This unit is equipped with an easy to see "Graphical User Interface" that uses menu displays and levels. The use of level displays increases operability of the this unit.

HDMI connectors enable connection to various digital AV devices (input: 7, output: 3)
The unit is equipped with 7 HDMI input connectors for connecting devices with HDMI connectors, such as a Blu-ray Disc player, game machine, HD digital camcorder, etc.

Supports HDMI (3D, ARC, Deep Color, "x.v.Color", Auto Lip Sync, 4K) and HDMI control function (☞page 8)
In addition to HDMI 3D and ARC (Audio Return Channel) functions, this unit supports the video pass-through function, which outputs video to TV without changing the video quality when video signals of 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels) are input, and the GUI overlay function, which overlays the menu screen (GUI) on the 4K video screen.

Simultaneous playback on two HDMI channels (for MAIN ZONE)
This unit is equipped with two HDMI MONITOR outputs. You can connect one output to a projector and the other output to a TV for simultaneous signal outputs.

Direct play for iPod® and iPhone® via USB (☞page 20)
Music data from an iPod can be played back if you connect the USB cable supplied with the iPod via the iPod/USB port of this unit, and also an iPod can be controlled with the remote control unit for this unit.

Audyssey DSX®
This unit is equipped with Audyssey DSX® processor. By connecting front height speakers to Power Amplifier and playing back through Audyssey DSX®, you can experience a more powerful playback expression in the height audio range. By connecting front wide speakers, you can experience a more powerful playback expression in the wide audio range.

M-XPort (marantz-eXtension Port) (☞page 24)
This unit is equipped with the M-XPort, a marantz original innovation that provides outstanding expandability. You can connect the Wireless Receiver RX101 (sold separately) to this port.

Remote Power Control
This unit is equipped with a remote power control function. When a marantz Power Amplifier MM8077 or MM7055 or MM7025 is connected to this unit, this unit's power can be switched ON/OFF together with the MM8077 or MM7055 or MM7025 power supply. Connection to the MM8077 or MM7055 or MM7025 is a ground floating connection that prevents negative influences on sound quality as far as possible.

Cautions on handling

- **Before turning the power on**
  Check once again that all connections are correct and that there are no problems with the connection cables.
- Power is supplied to some of the circuitry even when the unit is set to the standby mode. When going on vacation or leaving home for long periods of time, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet.
- **About condensation**
  If there is a major difference in temperature between the inside of the unit and the surroundings, condensation (dew) may form on the operating parts inside the unit, causing the unit not to operate properly.
  If this happens, let the unit sit for an hour or two with the power turned off and wait until there is little difference in temperature before using the unit.
- **Cautions on using mobile phones**
  Using a mobile phone near this unit may result in noise. If that occurs, move the mobile phone away from this unit when it is in use.
- **Moving the unit**
  Turn off the power and unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Next, disconnect the connection cables to other system units before moving the unit.
- **About care**
  - Wipe the cabinet and control panel clean with a soft cloth.
  - Follow the instructions when using a chemical cleaner.
  - Benzene, paint thinner or other organic solvents as well as insecticide may cause material changes and discoloration if brought into contact with the unit, and should therefore not be used.

Basic version

Here, we explain the connections and basic operation methods for this unit.

- **Connections** ☞page 5
- **Setup** ☞page 29
- **Playback (Basic operation)** ☞page 36
- **Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode)** ☞page 77

Connections

Important information

Make connections before using this unit.
To create a home theater that can play back higher quality video and audio by fully utilizing the capabilities of this unit and your video devices, connect this unit to each of your video devices with HDMI cables.

❑ HDMI-compatible device

If your video device does not support HDMI connections, use the following connection.

❑ HDMI-incompatible device

This unit can change the source that is assigned to the DIGITAL AUDIO IN and COMPONENT VIDEO IN connectors.
You can change the source for connectors listed in Input connector setting within pages that describe connections for devices.
For details on assigning a source to connectors, see "Changing the source assigned to connectors" (☞page 13). For the setting method, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).

NOTE

- **The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.**
- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the "Setup Assistant" is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" (📖 page 7) screen for making connections. (During "Setup Assistant" operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- When running the "Setup Assistant" (📖 page 7), turn off the power supply of connected devices.
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other devices being connected.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels properly (left with left, right with right).
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

❑ HDMI-compatible device

TV ☞page 9	CBL/SAT ☞page 11	DVD ☞page 11
Blu-ray ☞page 11	GAME ☞page 11	AUX ☞page 11
MEDIA PLAYER ☞page 11		

❑ HDMI-incompatible device

TV ☞page 14	CBL/SAT ☞page 15	DVD ☞page 16
Blu-ray ☞page 17	AUX ☞page 18	MEDIA PLAYER ☞page 19
iPod/USB ☞page 20	CD ☞page 21	PHONO ☞page 22
TUNER ☞page 23	M-XPort ☞page 24	NETWORK ☞page 27

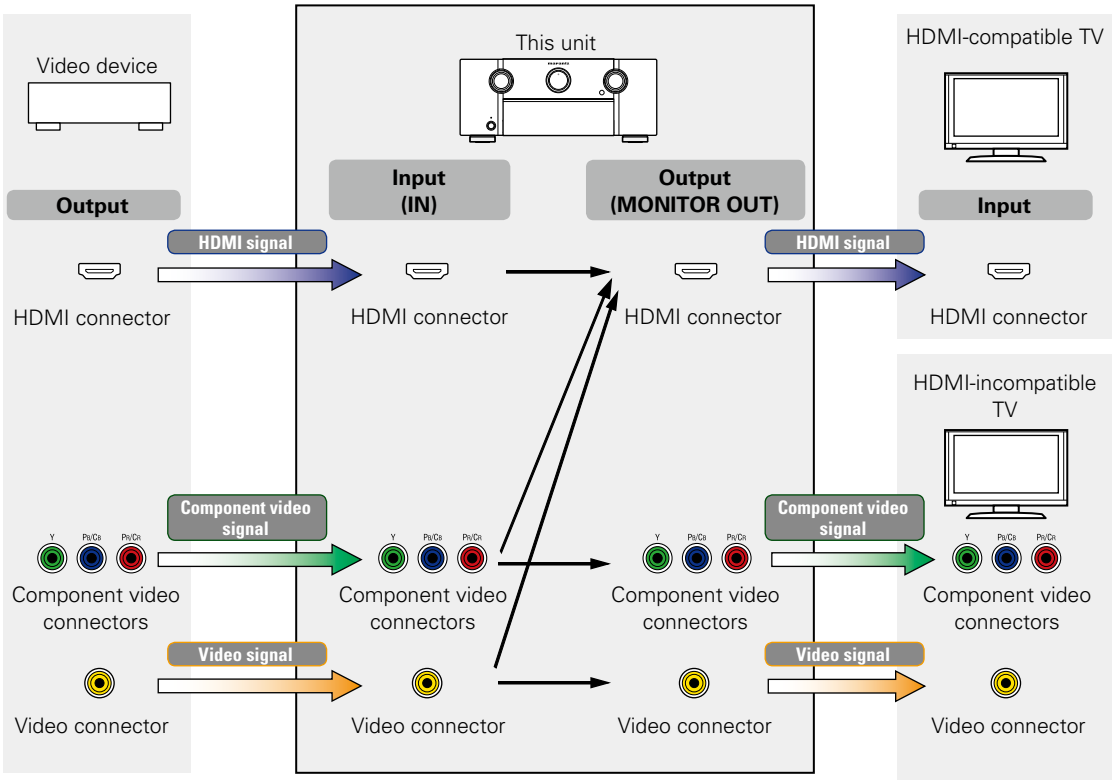
❑ Others

SPEAKER ☞page 86	AC IN ☞page 28

Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, Component video and video) and three types of video output connectors (HDMI, Component video and video).
This function automatically converts various formats of video signals input to this unit into the formats used to output the video signals from this unit to a monitor.

[Flow of video signals for MAIN ZONE]



For example, if you connect this unit to an HDMI-compatible TV with a single HDMI cable, this unit automatically converts input signals other than HDMI video signals to HDMI signals to output from the HDMI connector to the TV. This unit outputs only one type of video signals, so video signals output from this unit to the TV remain unchanged even if you switch to a device that outputs another type of video signals for playback. Therefore, you do not need to switch the video input on the TV. Furthermore, this unit converts the input analog video signals such as video and component video signals to high resolution digital HDMI video signals for output, improving the quality of the video.
If your TV does not support HDMI connections, connect this unit to TV with analog video connectors. This unit can not convert HDMI input signals to analog video signals, so when inputting from an HDMI device, use component video or video input connectors.

Make Settings as Necessary

- If you do not want this unit to convert video signals automatically, use the following setting item to disable this function.
  "Video Conversion" (☞page 118)
- If you want to change the resolution of video signals output to the TV, use the following setting item to do so.
  "Resolution" (☞page 118)

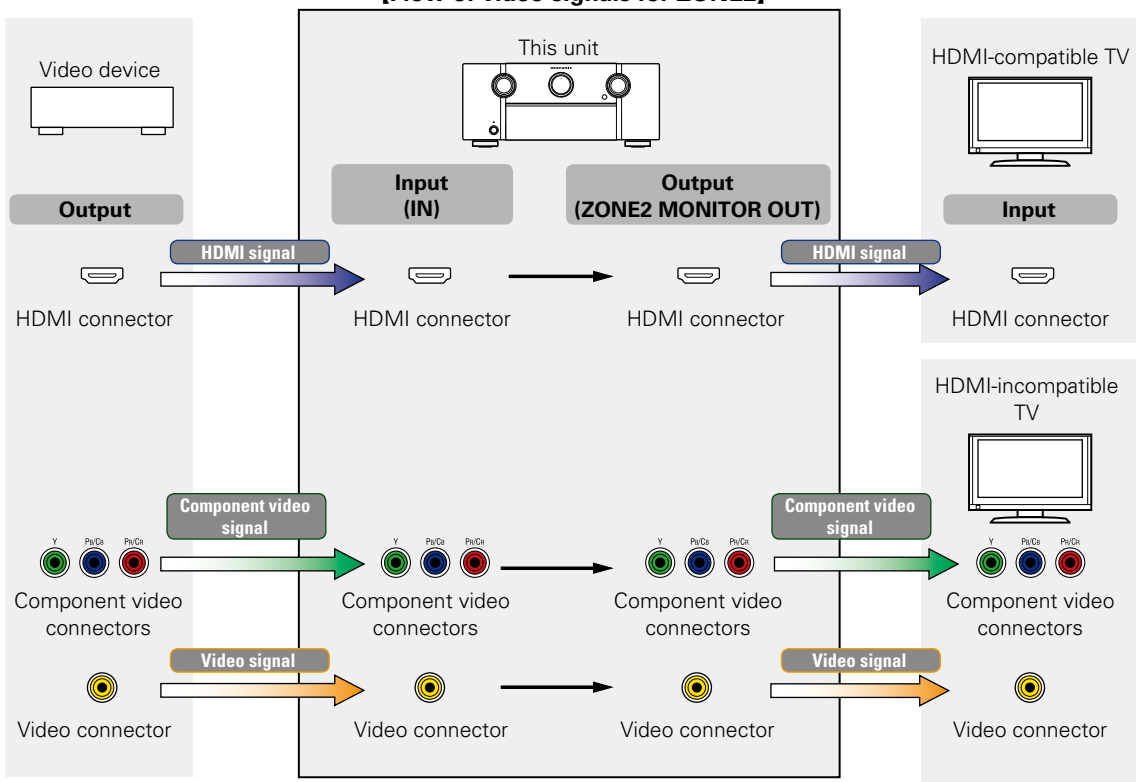
- The video conversion function supports the NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC 4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60 formats.
- Resolutions of HDMI-compatible TVs can be checked at "Video" – "Monitor" (☞page 137).

NOTE

- **The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.**
- HDMI signals are digital. HDMI signals cannot be converted into analog signals.
- When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is only compatible with the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connectors. It is not compatible with the HDMI 7 IN connector.

☞ See overleaf

【Flow of video signals for ZONE2】



NOTE

- HDMI signals are digital. HDMI signals cannot be converted into analog signals.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is only compatible with the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connectors. It is not compatible with the HDMI 7 IN connector.

Connecting an HDMI-compatible device

You can connect up to ten HDMI-compatible devices (7-inputs/3-outputs) to the unit.
When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connector in ZONE2 (☞page 100).
If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections. Connections with an HDMI cable offer the following benefits that can not be achieved with other connection methods.

- **High quality playback by transmitting audio and video via digital signals**
  HDMI connections can transmit high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, dts-HD, dts-HD Master Audio).
  HDMI connections also convey information required for playback between devices. The information is used for copyright protection and TV resolution recognition, the ARC function, the HDMI control function, etc.
- **Transmission of audio and video signals with a single HDMI cable**
  Previous connections require multiple audio and video cables, but HDMI connections require only a single HDMI cable to transmit audio and video signals. This allows wires in a home theater system, which tend to be complicated, to be more organized.
- **Mutual control through the HDMI control function (☞page 92)**
  This unit and the HDMI device connected via HDMI can be linked to perform operations such as power control, volume control, and input source switching.
- **Other video and audio functions, such as 3D video playback, Content Type, the ARC function, are supported (☞page 12).**

- There is more than one version of HDMI standard. The supported functions and the performance vary according to the version. This unit complies with the HDMI standard, supporting the ARC and 3D playback functions. To enjoy these functions, the HDMI device connected to this unit also needs to use the same version of the standard. For the version of the HDMI standard on the device connected to this unit, see the device's manual.
- Some TVs do not support audio input via HDMI connections. For details, see your TV's manual.

❏ **Before connecting this unit to TV via HDMI connections** (☞page 9)
❏ **Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections** (☞page 10)

❏ **Connecting this unit to video devices via HDMI connections** (☞page 11)

❏ **HDMI function** (☞page 12)
❏ **Settings related to HDMI connections** (☞page 12)

Before connecting this unit to TV via HDMI connections

There are 2 methods to connect HDMI-compatible TV to this unit.
Use the connection method that suits your TV.

Does the TV to be connected to this unit support the ARC function?

Yes ↓

Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections (☞page 10)

No ↓

Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections (☞page 10)

+

Connecting a TV (☞page 14)

For audio connections, use a method other than HDMI connections.

❑ About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function

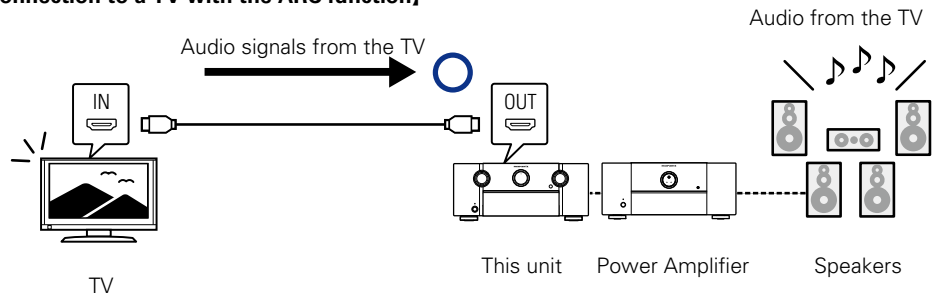
This function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.
If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.
In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.

When the ARC function is used, connect a device with a "Standard HDMI cable with Ethernet" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" for HDMI.
Refer to the owner's manual for your TV for details about TV connection and settings.

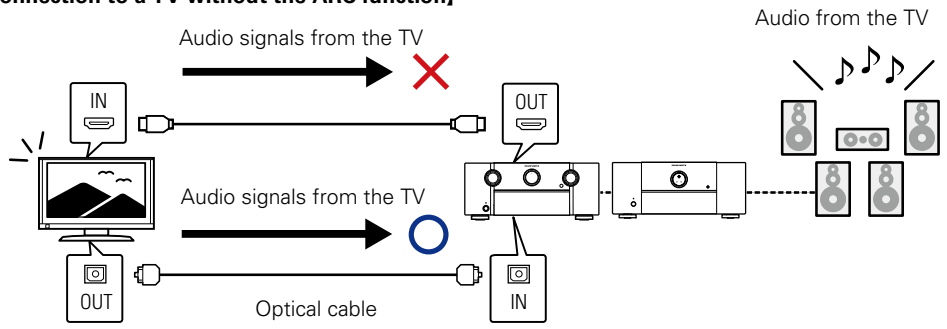
NOTE

The HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector is not compatible with the ARC function.

【Connection to a TV with the ARC function】



【Connection to a TV without the ARC function】

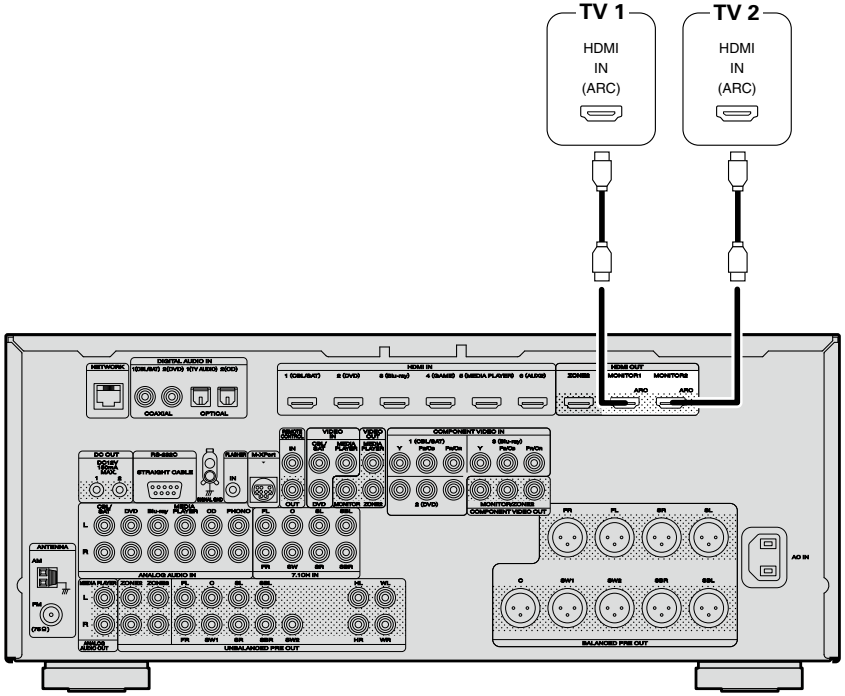


Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections

When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connector in ZONE2 (☞page 100).

Cables used for connections

Audio and video cable (sold separately)
HDMI cable



- Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor's resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player's resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.
- When this unit and monitor are connected with an HDMI cable, if the monitor is not compatible with HDMI audio signal playback, only the video signals are output to the monitor. Make audio connections (☞page 14 "Connecting a TV").

NOTE

- The audio signal from the HDMI output connector (sampling frequency, number of channels, etc.) may be limited by the HDMI audio specifications of the connected device regarding permissible inputs.
- **When connecting a TV that does not support the ARC function, an audio cable connection is required in addition to the HDMI cable. In this case, refer to "Connecting a TV" (☞page 14) for the connection method.**
  For the ARC function, see "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function" (☞page 9).

Connecting to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector

The DVI-D (Digital Visual Interface) method is also used for video transmission via digital signals. This is developed mainly for computers, and some AV devices such as projectors are equipped with this interface. To output HDMI video signals to a DVI-D video input compatible device, use an HDMI/DVI conversion cable, which converts HDMI video signals to DVI signals.
The DVI-D connector can transmit high quality digital signals, but the copy guard and other issues may hinder normal operations for some device combinations.

NOTE

- No sound is output when connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector. Make audio connections as described in "Connecting a TV" (☞page 14).
- Signals cannot be output to DVI-D devices that do not support HDCP.
- Depending on the combination of devices, the video signals may not be output.

Settings required when using a TV that supports the ARC function

When using a TV that supports the ARC function, make the following settings.
- Set "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) to "On".
- Set "Control Monitor" (☞page 117) to match the number of the HDMI MONITOR connector connected to the TV that supports the ARC function.

NOTE

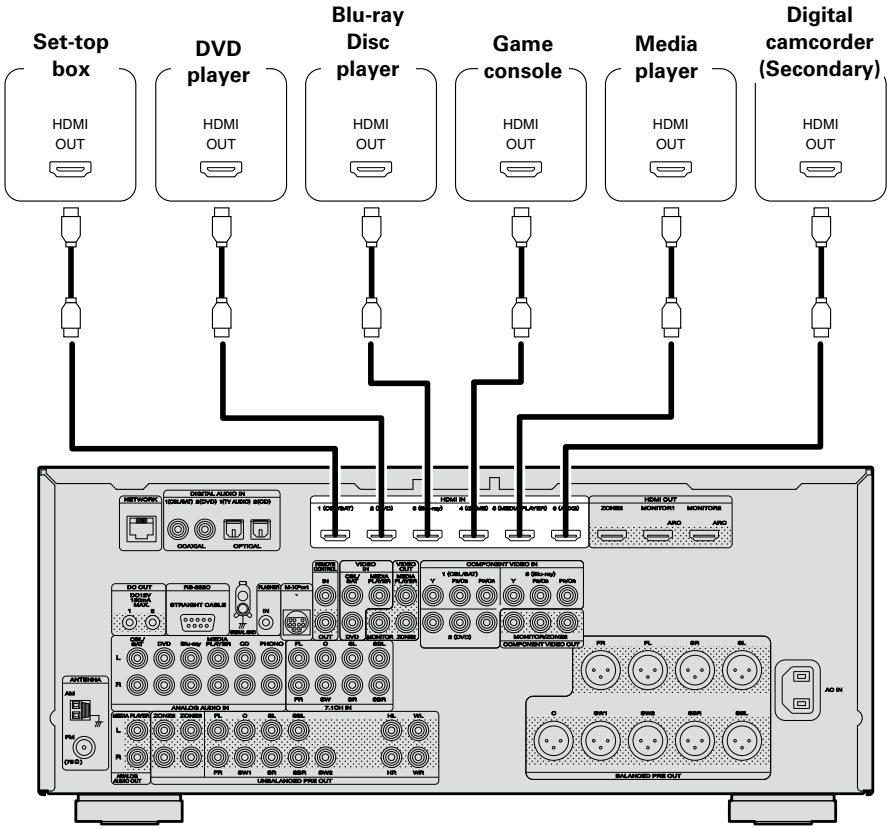
If the TV that supports the ARC function is connected to both HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors, you cannot use ARC function at the same time.

Connecting this unit to video devices via HDMI connections

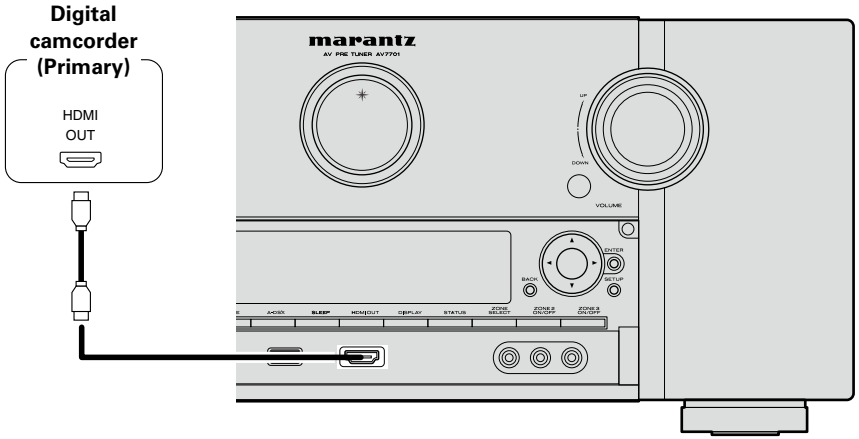
Cables used for connections

Audio and video cable (sold separately)
HDMI cable

• This interface allows transfer of digital video signals and digital audio signals over a single HDMI cable.



【Rear panel】



【Front panel】

• When this unit is connected to other devices with HDMI cables, connect this unit and TV also with an HDMI cable.
• When connecting a device that supports Deep Color or 4K, please use a "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".
• Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor's resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player's resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.

HDMI function

This unit supports the following HDMI functions:

❑ About 3D function

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI.
To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

NOTE

- When playing back 3D video, refer to the instructions provided in the manual of your playback device together with this manual.
- When playing back 3D video content, the menu screen or status display screen can be superimposed over the image. However, the menu screen or status display screen cannot be superimposed over certain 3D video content.
- If 3D video with no 3D information is input, the menu screen and status display on this unit are displayed over the playback video.
- If 2D video is converted to 3D video on the television, the menu screen and status display on this unit are not displayed correctly. To view the menu screen and status display on this unit correctly, turn the television setting that converts 2D video to 3D video off.

❑ About 4K function

This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

When a device supporting 4K is connected, use a cable compatible with "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".

❑ HDMI control function (☞page 92)

This function allows you to operate external devices from the unit and operate the unit from external devices.

NOTE

- The HDMI control function may not work depending on the device it is connected to and its settings.
- You cannot operate a TV or Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player that is not compatible with the HDMI control function.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI control function.

❑ About Content Type

This function was added with the HDMI standard. It automatically makes settings suitable for the video-output type (content information).

NOTE

To enable the Content Type, set "Video Mode" to "Auto" (☞page 118).

❑ Deep Color (☞page 166)

When a device supporting Deep Color is connected, use a cable compatible with "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".

❑ Auto Lip Sync (☞page 116, 166)

❑ "x.v.Color", sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color (☞page 166, 168)

❑ High definition digital audio format

❑ ARC (Audio Return Channel) (☞page 9)

Copyright protection system
In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD-Video or DVD-Video via HDMI connection, both this unit and TV or the player need to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP. • If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.

Settings related to HDMI connections

Set as necessary. For details, see the respective reference pages.

❑ HDMI Setup (☞page 116)

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

- Auto Lip Sync
- HDMI Audio Out
- Video Output
- HDMI Control
- Standby Source
- Control Monitor
- Power Off Control

NOTE

The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV.
Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI MONITOR output connector.

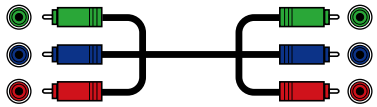
Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device

For high quality video and surround playback, it is recommended to use an HDMI cable to connect this unit to TV and other video devices (☞page 8 “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device”).
This section describes connections when your device does not support HDMI connections.

Connection methods for various devices

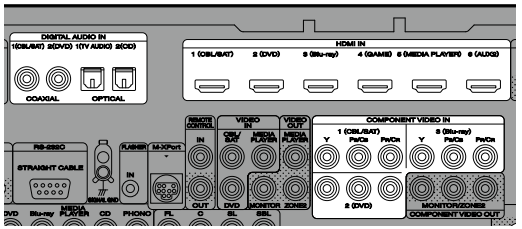
TV ☞page 14	CBL/SAT ☞page 15
DVD ☞page 16	Blu-ray ☞page 17
AUX ☞page 18	MEDIA PLAYER ☞page 19
iPod/USB ☞page 20	CD ☞page 21
PHONO ☞page 22	TUNER ☞page 23
M-XPort ☞page 24	NETWORK ☞page 27

Cables used for connections

Video cable (sold separately)	
Component video cable	
Video cable	
Audio cable (sold separately)	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
Cable (sold separately)	
Ethernet cable	

Changing the source assigned to connectors

This unit can change the source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN and COMPONENT VIDEO IN connectors.



Let us take a digital audio connection for Blu-ray Disc players for an example. The rear panel digital audio input connectors do not have the input connector indication for Blu-ray disc players (Blu-ray). You can assign Blu-ray disc players to these connectors to use them for Blu-ray disc players. Select “Blu-ray” when switching functions on this unit to play back the source connected to these connectors.

❑ How to change the source assigned to connectors (☞page 122)

Connecting a TV

- This section describes how to connect when your TV does not support HDMI connections.
  For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).
- If the TV connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector that supports ARC, digital audio signals from TV can be transmitted to this unit (☞page 9 "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function"). The ARC function allows you to enjoy on this unit the audio from TV programs and HDMI devices directly connected to TV, without having to make a separate audio connection. For the ARC function, also see your TV's manual.
- To listen to TV audio through this device, use the optical digital connection.

For video connections, see "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)" (☞page 6).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**

1 DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector *

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ Input connector setting)

❑ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 COMPONENT VIDEO OUT (MONITOR) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

2 VIDEO OUT (MONITOR) connector

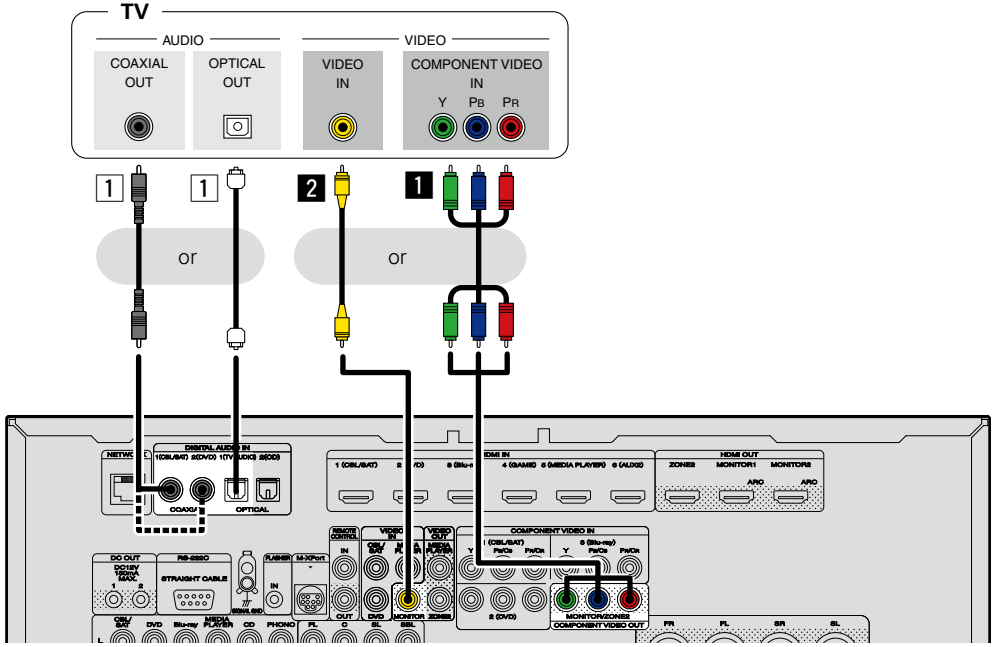
This makes an analog video connection.

Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

1 **DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "TV AUDIO".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).



NOTE

- **The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.**
- If you do not connect this unit to your TV via HDMI, do not make HDMI connections for video inputs from other video devices, either. For details see "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)" (☞page 6).
- When content on iPod, USB memory devices, or the network is being played back with your TV connected to the COMPONENT VIDEO OUT connector, screens output from this unit such as the playback cannot be displayed. To display screens output from this unit, connect your TV to both the COMPONENT VIDEO OUT connector and the VIDEO OUT connector.

Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

This section describes how to connect when your satellite tuner or cable TV does not support HDMI connections.
For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector *

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ **Input connector setting**)

2 AUDIO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

❑ Video connection

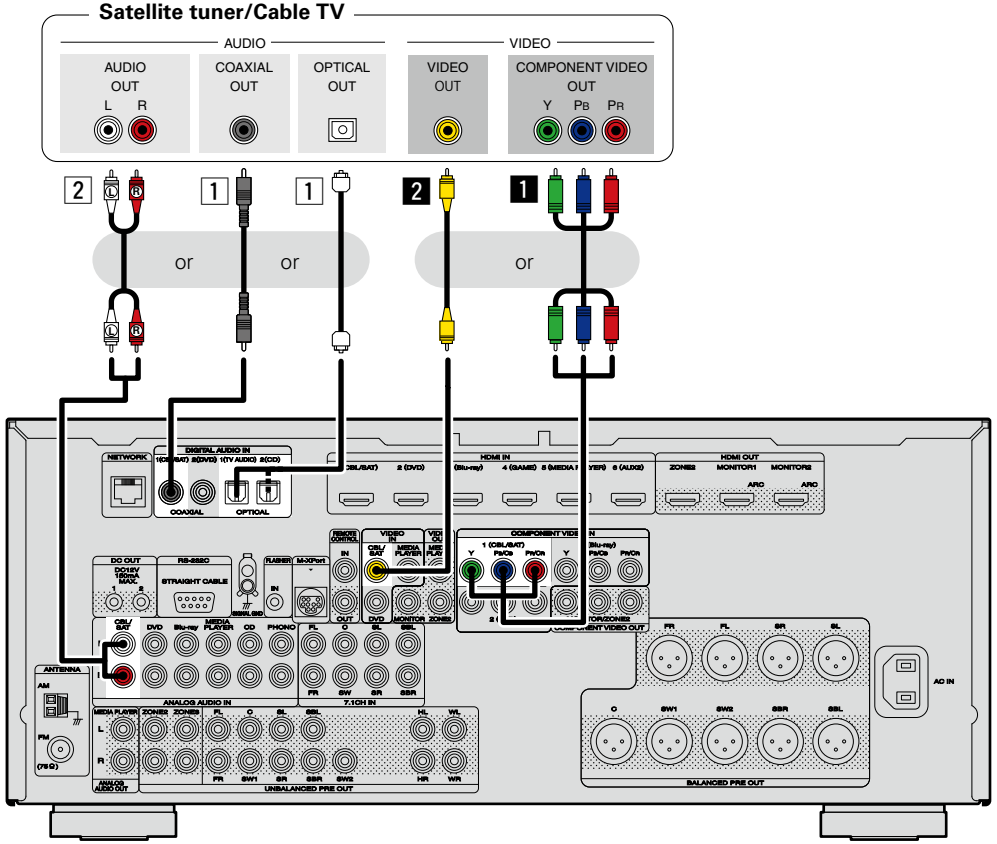
The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 COMPONENT VIDEO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

2 VIDEO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog video connection.



Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

1 **DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "CBL/SAT".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).

Connecting a DVD player

This section describes how to connect when your DVD player does not support HDMI connections.
For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector *

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ Input connector setting)

2 AUDIO IN (DVD) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

❑ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 COMPONENT VIDEO IN (DVD) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

2 VIDEO IN (DVD) connector

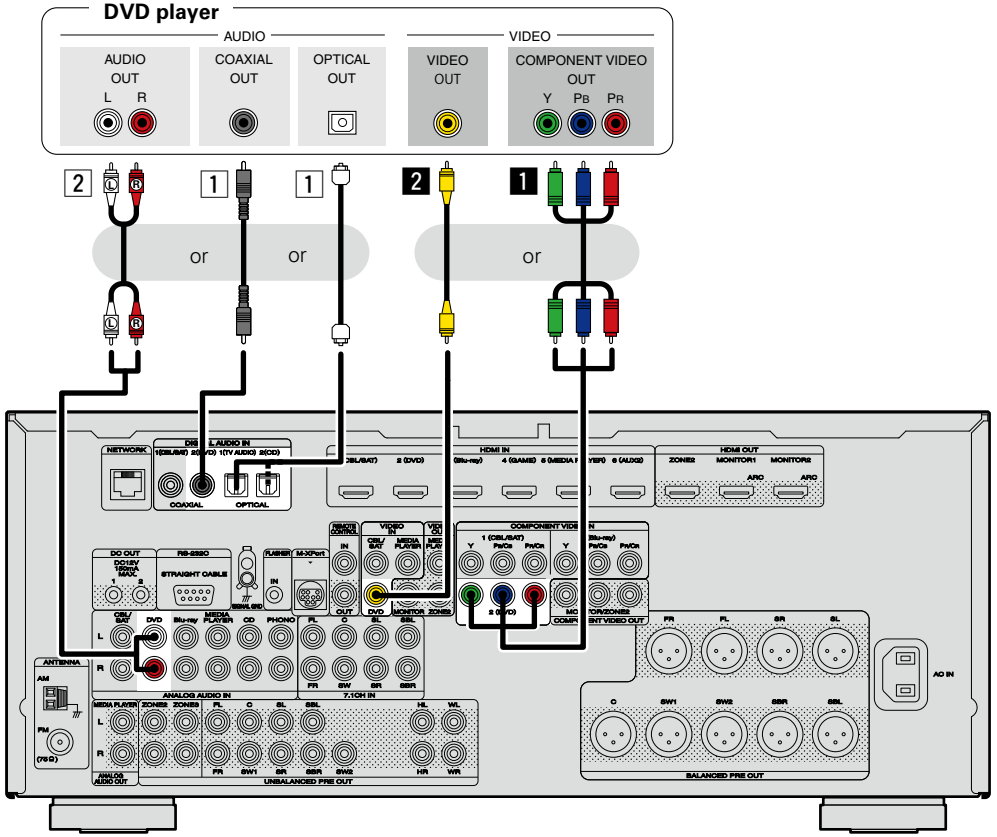
This makes an analog video connection.

Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "DVD".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).



Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player

This section describes how to connect when your Blu-ray disc player does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound. However, digital bit stream audio signals for HD audios from Blu-ray disc players (such as Dolby Digital Plus and dts-HD) can not be transmitted.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(☞ Input connector setting)

2 AUDIO IN (Blu-ray) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

❑ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit.

1 COMPONENT VIDEO IN (Blu-ray) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

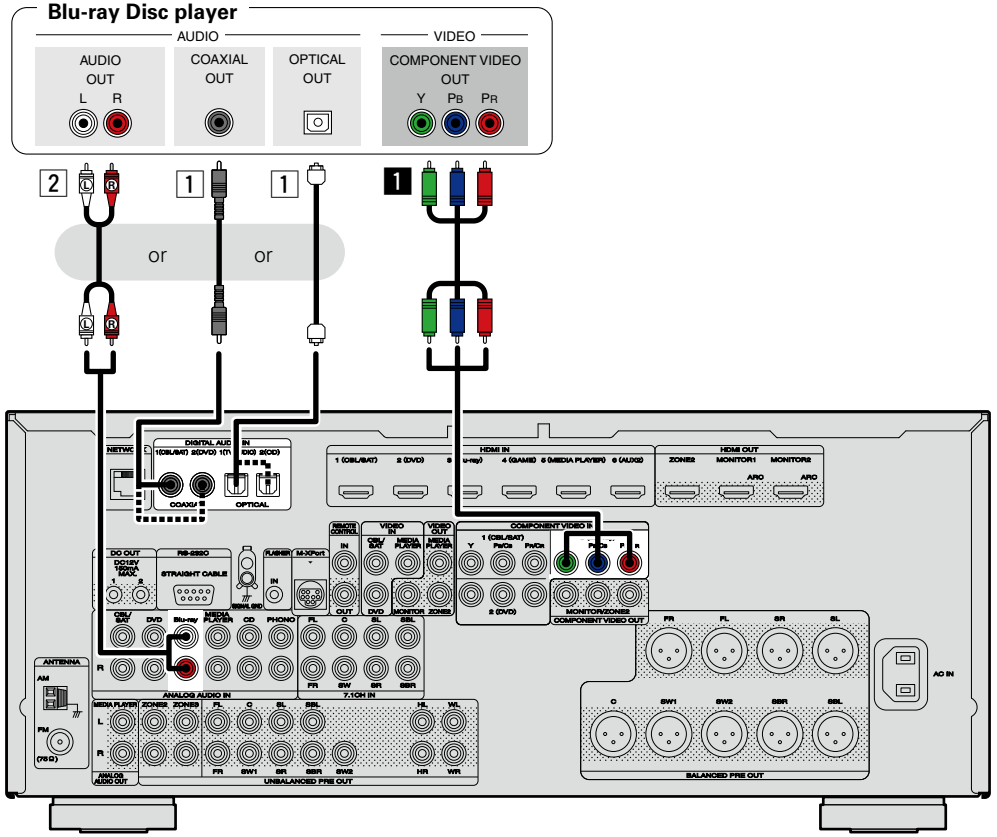
1 **DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "Blu-ray".

DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "Blu-ray".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).



When you want to play back HD Audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS Express) and Multi-channel PCM with this unit, use an HDMI connection (☞page 8 "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device").

Connecting a digital camcorder

This section describes how to connect when your digital camcorder does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.
When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ **Input connector setting**)

2 AUDIO IN (AUX1) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

❑ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

■1 COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.
When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ **Input connector setting**)

■2 VIDEO IN (AUX1) connector

This makes an analog video connection.

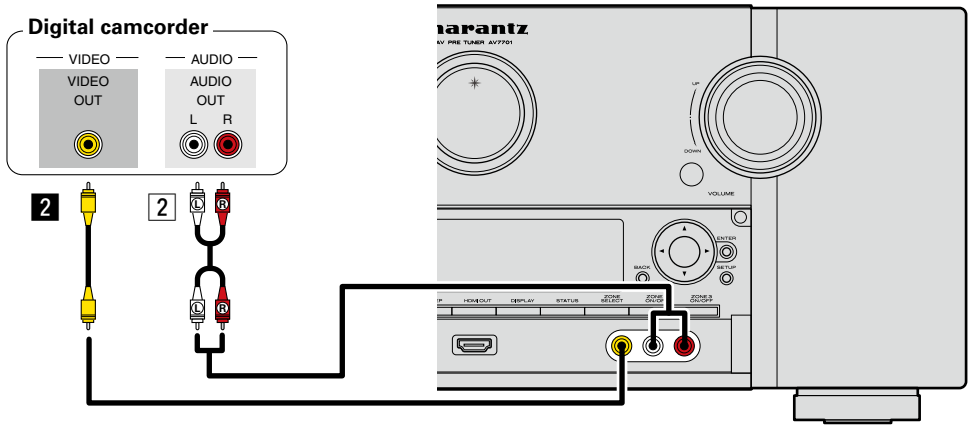
Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

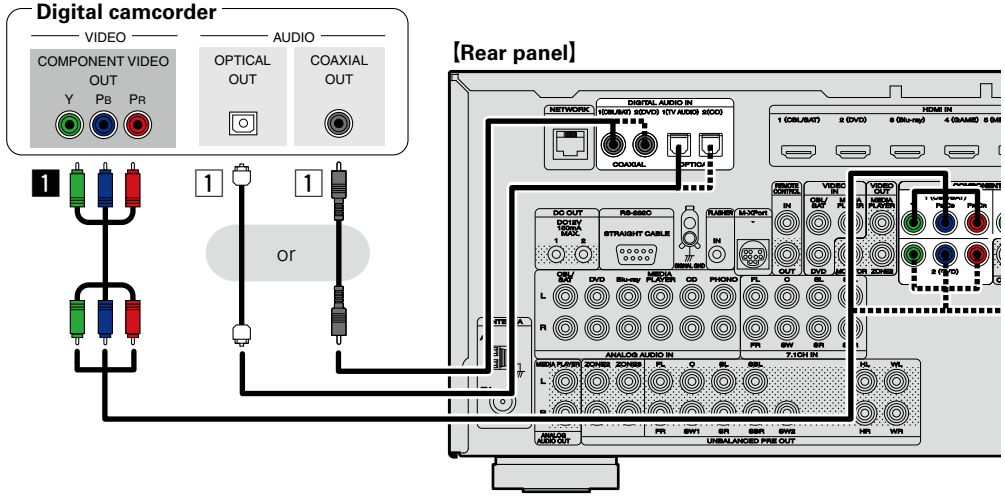
1 **DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "AUX2".
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "AUX2".
■1 **COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as ■1, change "CBL/SAT" to "AUX2".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).

【Front panel】



【Rear panel】



You can enjoy games by connecting a game machine via the AUX1 input connector. In this case, select the input source to "AUX1".

NOTE

When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function (☞page 6) might not operate. In this case, use the monitor output of the same connector as the input.

Connecting a media player

This section describes how to connect when your media player does not support HDMI connections.
For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (☞page 8).

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.
When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ Input connector setting)

2 AUDIO IN (MEDIA PLAYER) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

❑ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**
The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

■1 COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.
When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.
(☞ Input connector setting)

■2 VIDEO IN/OUT (MEDIA PLAYER) connector

This makes an analog video connection.

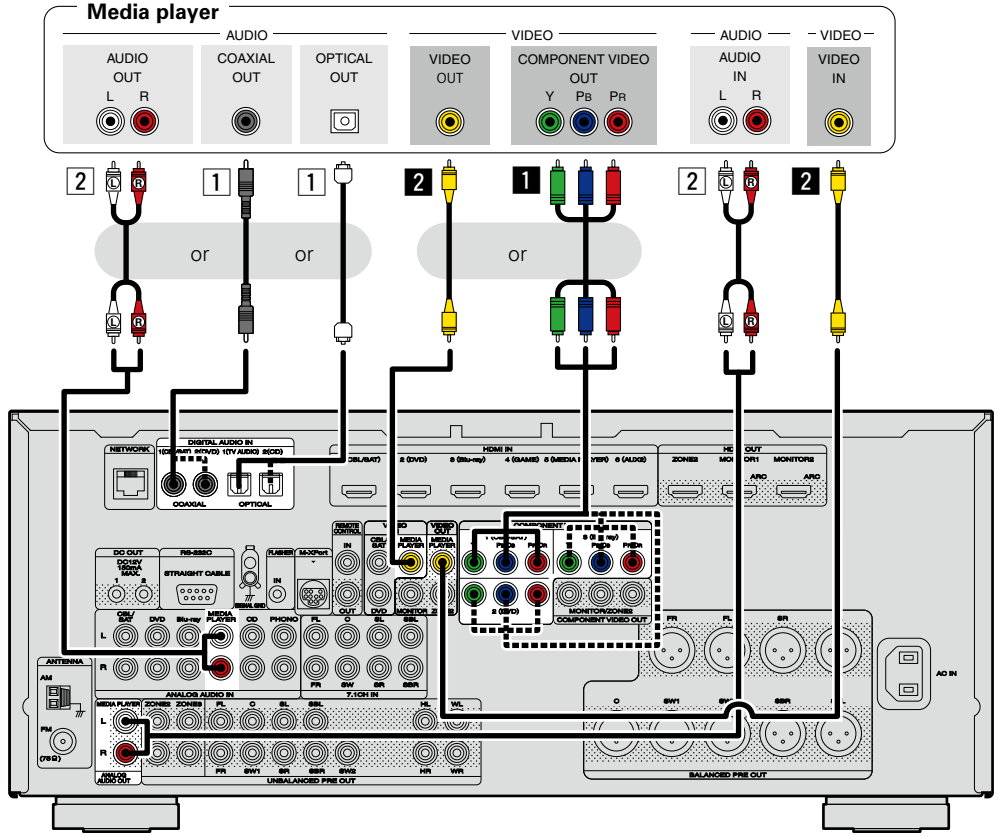
Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

1 **DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "MEDIA PLAYER".
DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "MEDIA PLAYER".

■1 **COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector**
When connecting to connectors marked as ■1, change "CBL/SAT" to "MEDIA PLAYER".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).



NOTE

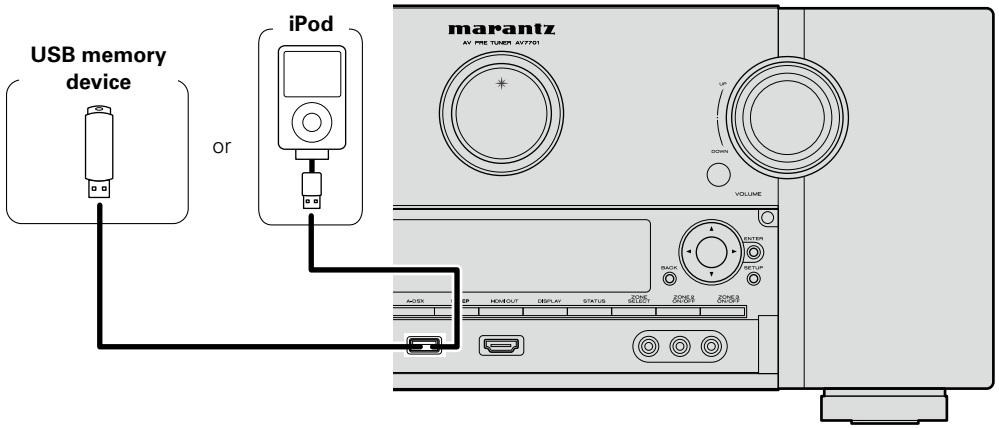
To record video signals through this unit, use the video cable for connection between this unit and the player.

Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the iPod/USB port

- You can enjoy music stored on an iPod or USB memory device.
- For operating instructions see "Playing an iPod" (☞page 39) or "Playing a USB memory device" (☞page 42).

Cables used for connections

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB cable supplied with the iPod.



marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB connection type HDD of the kind to which an AC adapter can be connected to supply power, use the AC adapter.

NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's iPod/USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.
- When connecting an iPhone to this unit, keep the iPhone at least 20 cm away from this unit. If the iPhone is kept closer to this unit and a telephone call is received by the iPhone, noise may be output from this device.
- If the iPod is connected using an iPod cable (commercially available) that is longer than 6.6 ft (2 m), sound may not be played correctly. In this case, use a genuine iPod cable, or a cable that is shorter than 3.3 ft (1 m).

Supported iPod models

• iPod classic

iPod classic
80GB

iPod classic
160GB (2007)

iPod classic
160GB (2009)

• iPod nano

iPod nano
3rd generation
(video)
4GB 8GB

iPod nano
4th generation (video)
8GB 16GB

iPod nano
5th generation (video camera)
8GB 16GB

iPod nano
6th generation
8GB 16GB

• iPod touch

iPod touch
1st generation
8GB 16GB 32GB

iPod touch
2nd generation
8GB 16GB 32GB

iPod touch
3rd generation
32GB 64GB

iPod touch
4th generation
8GB 32GB 64GB

• iPhone

iPhone
4GB 8GB 16GB

iPhone 3G
8GB 16GB

iPhone 3GS
8GB 16GB 32GB

iPhone 4
8GB 16GB 32GB

iPhone 4S
16GB 32GB 64GB

(as of Aug 2012)

Connecting a CD player

You can enjoy CD sound.

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.**

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector
DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector *

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit. (☞ **Input connector setting**)

2 AUDIO IN (CD) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

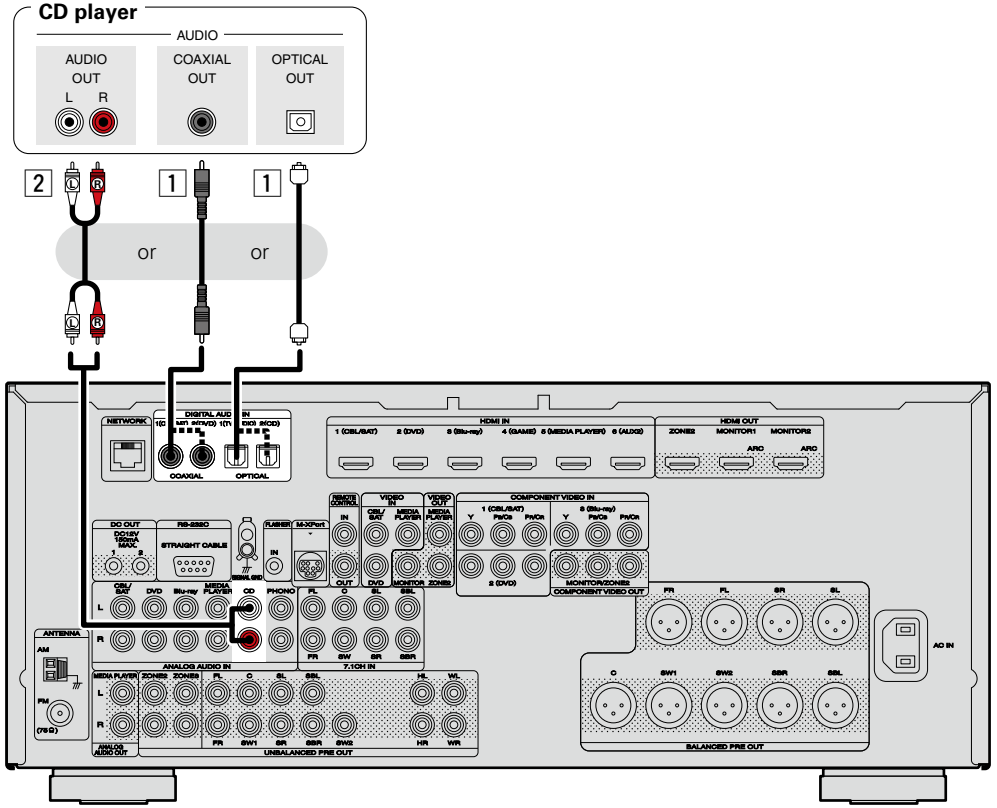
Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "CD".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (☞page 122).



When you want to play back HD Audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS Express), DSD and Multi-channel PCM with this unit, use an HDMI connection (☞page 8 "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device").

Connecting a record player

You can enjoy playing records.

❑ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit.

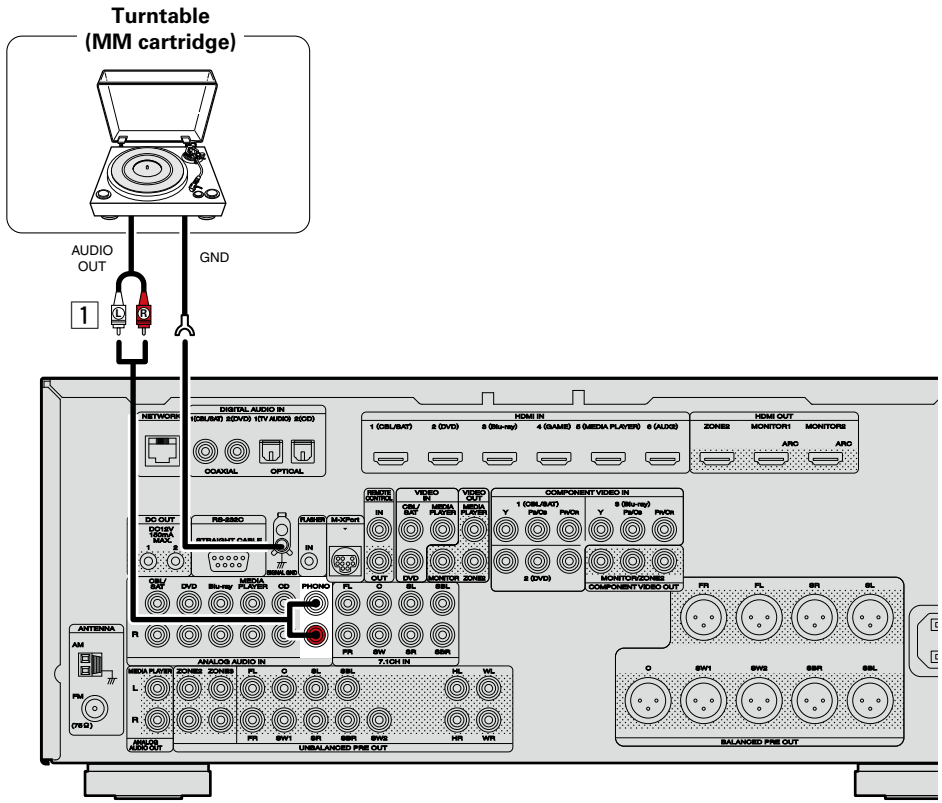
1 AUDIO IN (PHONO) connector

This makes an analog audio connection.

- This unit is compatible with record players with an MM cartridge. When you connect to a record player with an MC cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.
- If you set this unit's input source to "PHONO" and increase the volume without connecting the record player, there may be a "booming" noise from the speakers.

NOTE

The SIGNAL GND terminal of this unit is not a safety ground connection. Connect it to reduce noise when noise is excessive. Note that depending on the record player, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.



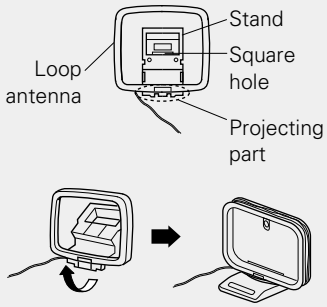
Connecting an HD Radio receiver

- By connecting a HD Radio antenna to this unit, you can receive HD Radio programs.
- HD Radio broadcasting currently is available in the United States and select other countries.
- After connecting the antenna and receiving a broadcast signal (☞page 46 "Listening to HD Radio stations"), fix the antenna with tape in a position where the noise level becomes minimal.

❑ AM loop antenna assembly

1 **Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.**

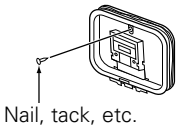
2 **Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.**



❑ Using the AM loop antenna

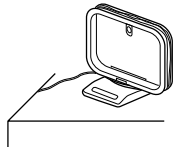
Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.



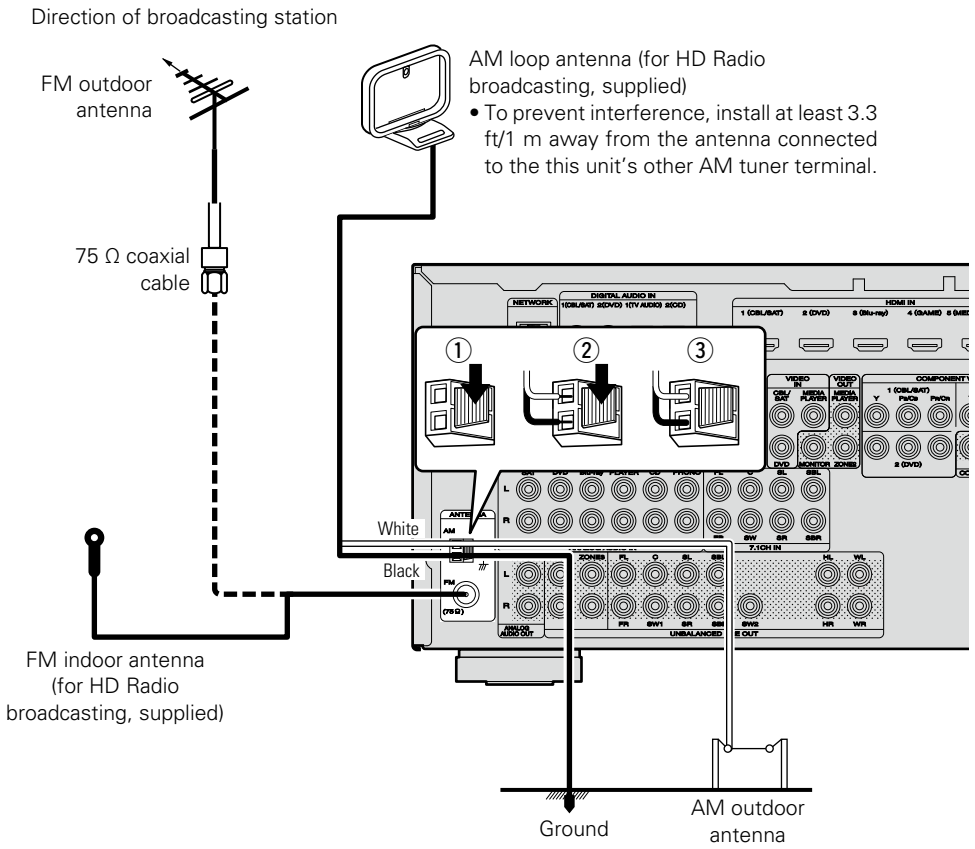
Standing alone

Use the procedure shown above to assemble.



NOTE

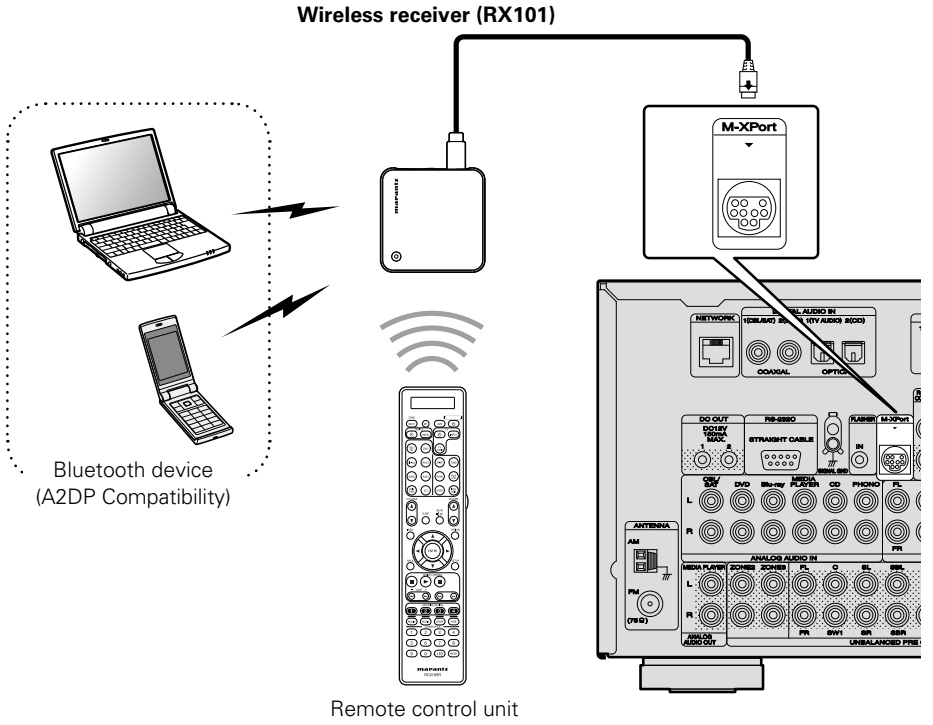
- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- Even if an external AM antenna is used, do not disconnect the AM loop antenna.
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.
- If the signal has noise interference, connect the ground terminal (GND) to reduce noise.
- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.



Connecting a wireless receiver (RX101)

- You can connect a wireless receiver (RX101, sold separately) to play back music on your Bluetooth device with this unit.
- To do this, switch the input source to "M-XPort" (☞page 36 "Selecting the input source").
- This unit supports the A2DP standard of the Bluetooth profile.
- See also the manuals for your wireless receiver and Bluetooth device.

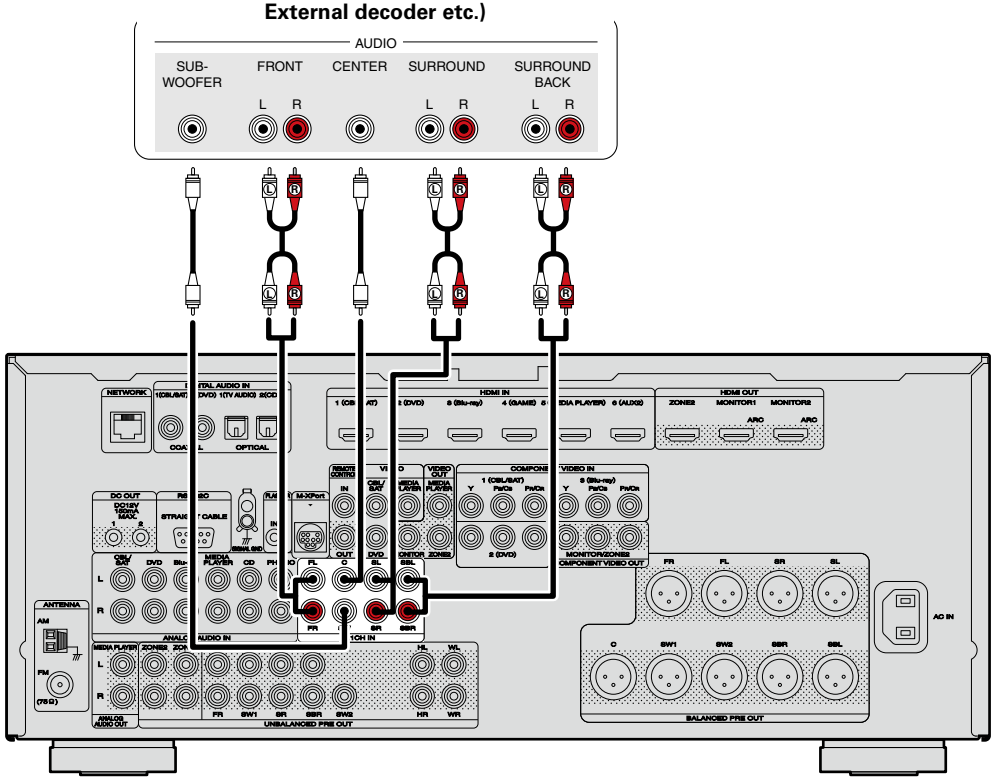
- When connecting your Bluetooth device to the wireless receiver for the first time, pairing is necessary. Once pairing is completed, the communication between your Bluetooth device and the wireless receiver can be established just by connecting them. Pairing is necessary for each Bluetooth device.
- You can also use the wireless receiver as an IR receiver. In this case, disable the remote control signal receiving function (☞page 98 "Remote lock function").



Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector

- You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multi-channel sound audio output connectors to enjoy music and video.
- To play analog signals input from 7.1CH IN connectors, set “Input Mode” (☞page 124) to “7.1CH IN”.
- The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player / DVD player (☞page 16 “Connecting a DVD player”, ☞page 17 “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player”).

Devices with a multi-channel output connector (Blu-ray Disc player, DVD player, External decoder etc.)

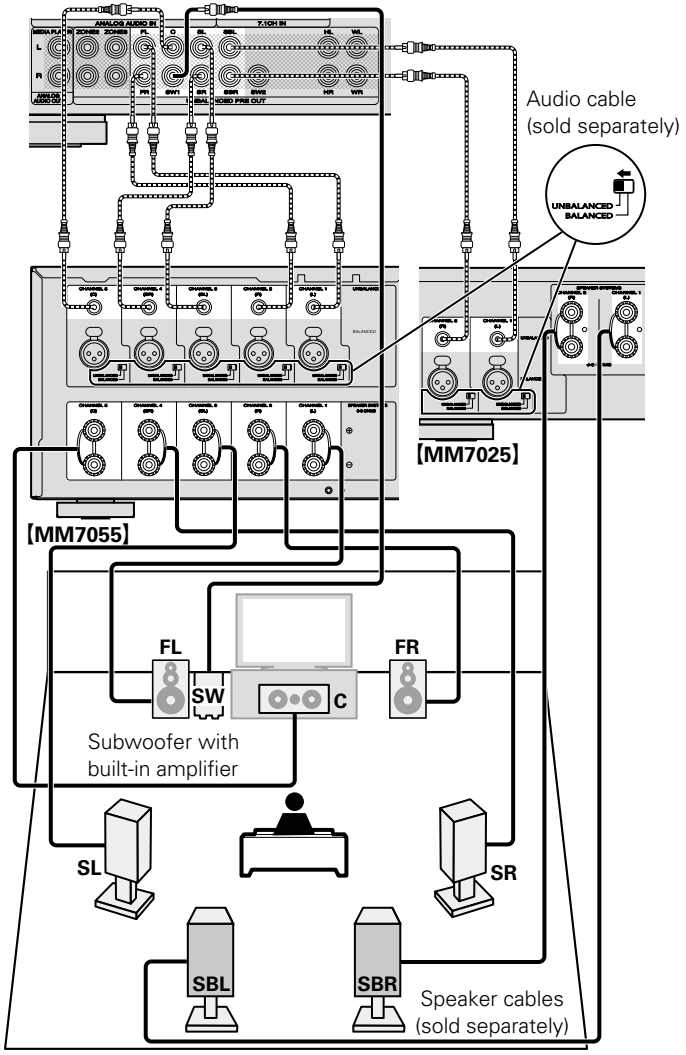


Power amp

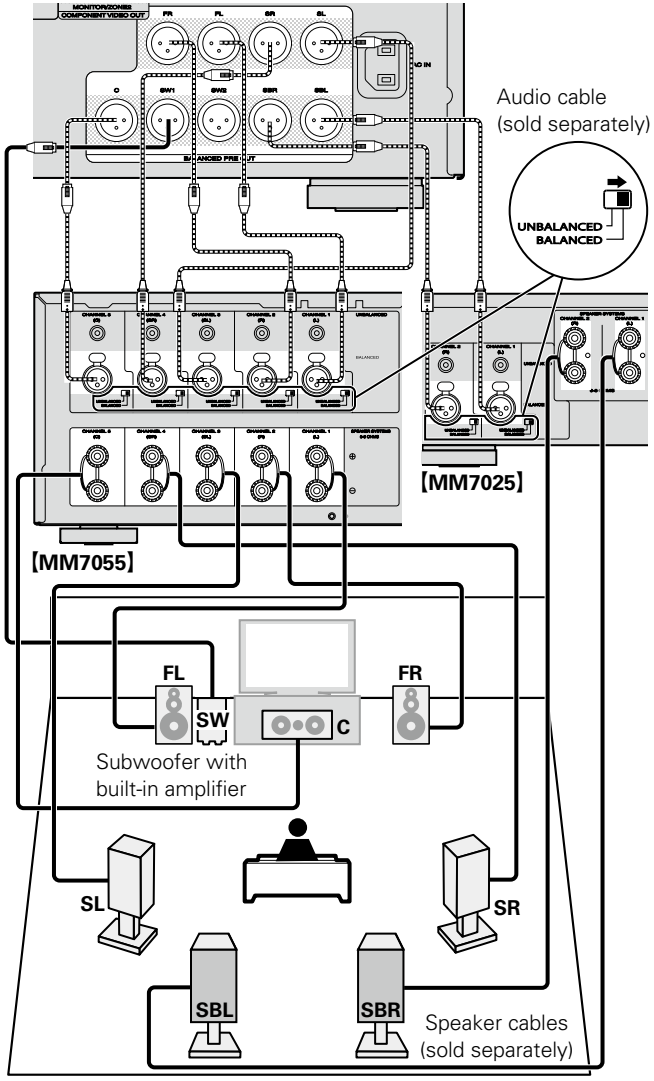
- Connect a power amp (sold separately) to the PRE OUT terminal of this unit.
- This unit has an UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal and BALANCED PRE OUT terminal. Connect to the correct terminal for your power amp.
- Connect the speakers to the power amp.
- For details on speaker connections, see the User Guide for the power amp.
- This section shows how to make a 7.1 ch connection by using a surround speaker. For how to make other speaker connections, see page 86.

❑ Example of connections to marantz MM7055 and MM7025 power amp

Connecting the unbalanced PRE OUT terminal



Connecting the balanced PRE OUT terminal



【AV7701 XLR connector PIN arrangement】

① GND (Ground)
② HOT (Hot)
③ COLD (Cold)

The PIN arrangement in this device uses the European method.
In the USA method, ② is COLD, and ③ is HOT. When connecting a device that utilizes the USA type of PIN arrangement, replace the ② and ③ plugs on one side of the balanced cable.

NOTE

Do not short the HOT and GND or COLD and GND for use.

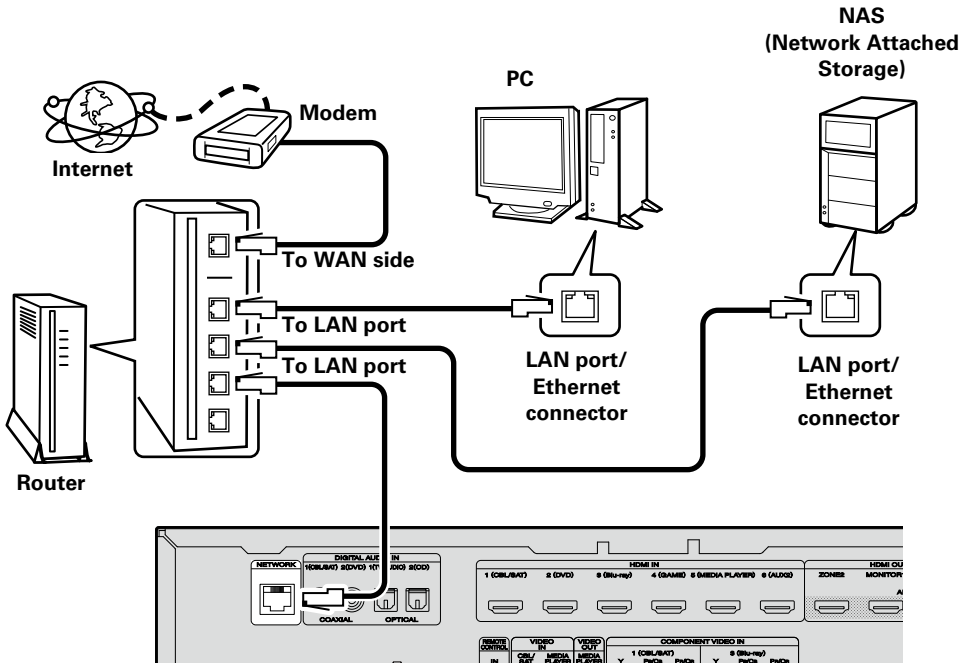
Connecting to a home network (LAN)

You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to perform various types of playbacks and operations as follows. Make network connections for this unit by carefully reading information on this page.

- Playback of network audio such as the Internet radio and music servers
- Playback of music from online services
- AirPlay
- Operations on this unit via the network

In addition, when an updated firmware becomes available for improving this unit, the update information is delivered from us to this unit over the network. You can then download the latest firmware.
For more information, on the menu, select "Update" (☞page 138).

Network settings are necessary. See "Network" on the menu (☞page 130) for more information on network setting.



For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

Required system

❑ Broadband internet connection

❑ Modem

Device that connects to the broadband circuit and conducts communications on the Internet.
A type that is integrated with a router is also available.

❑ Router

When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:

- Built-in DHCP server
  This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
- Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
  When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

❑ Ethernet cable (CAT-5 or greater recommended)

- Use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
- The normal shielded-type Ethernet cable is recommended. If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.

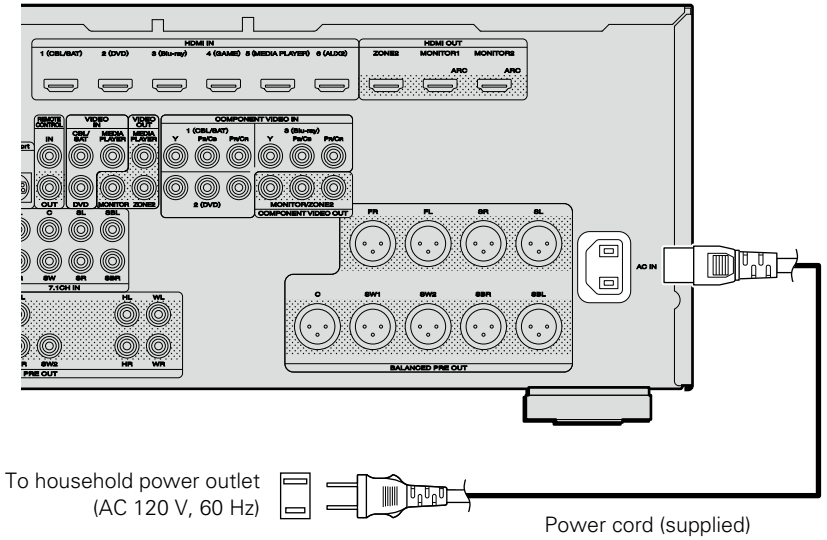
- If you have an Internet provider contract for a line on which network settings are made manually, make the settings at "Network" (☞page 130).
- With this unit, it is possible to use the DHCP and Auto IP functions to make the network settings automatically.
- When using this unit with the broadband router's DHCP function enabled, this unit automatically performs the IP address setting and other settings.
  When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, make the settings for the IP address, etc., at "Network" (☞page 130).
- When setting manually, check the setting contents with the network administrator.

NOTE

- A contract with an ISP is required to connect to the Internet.
  No additional contract is needed if you already have a broadband connection to the Internet.
- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact an ISP or a computer shop for details.
- marantz assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any communication errors or troubles resulting from customer's network environment or connected devices.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE-compatible router is required if you have a contract for a type of line set by PPPoE.
- Do not connect an NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port/ Ethernet connector on your computer.
- To listen to audio streaming, use a router that supports audio streaming.

Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



To household power outlet
(AC 120 V, 60 Hz)

Power cord (supplied)

NOTE

- **Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed.**
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in humming or noise.

Setup

Here, we explain "Audyssey® Setup", which allows you to automatically make the optimal settings for your speakers, and "Network", which allows you to connect this unit to a home network (LAN).
This unit lets you play via your home network (LAN) music files stored on a computer and music content such as that from Internet radio.

❑ **Connect** (☞page 86)
❑ **Set up speakers (Audyssey® Setup)** (☞page 29)
❑ **Making the network settings (Network)** (☞page 35)
Playback (Basic operation) (☞page 36)
Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (☞page 77)
Playback (Advanced operation) (☞page 92)

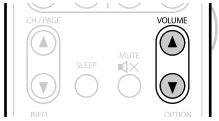
Set up speakers (Audyssey® Setup) GUI

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called "Audyssey® Setup".
To perform measurement, place the setup microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

- When performing Audyssey® Setup, Audyssey MultEQ® XT/ Audyssey Dynamic EQ®/Audyssey Dynamic Volume® functions become active (☞page 112).
- To set up the speakers manually, use "Speakers" (☞page 126) on the menu.

NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (TVs, radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not unplug the setup microphone from the main unit until Audyssey® Setup is completed.
- Do not stand between the speakers and setup microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. This will cause inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, loud test sounds may be played, but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating **VOLUME ▲▼** on the remote control unit or **VOLUME** on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.

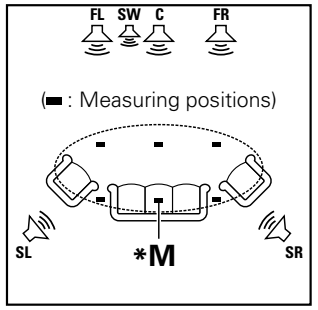


- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.

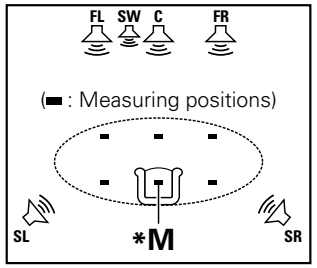
About setup microphone placement

- Measurements are performed by placing the setup microphone successively at multiple positions throughout the entire listening area, as shown in **【Example ①】**. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).
- Even if the listening environment is small as shown in **【Example ②】**, measuring at multiple points throughout the listening environment results in more effective correction.

【Example ①】



【Example ②】



FL Front speaker (L)
FR Front speaker (R)
C Center speaker
SW Subwoofer
SL Surround speaker (L)
SR Surround speaker (R)

About the main listening position (*M)

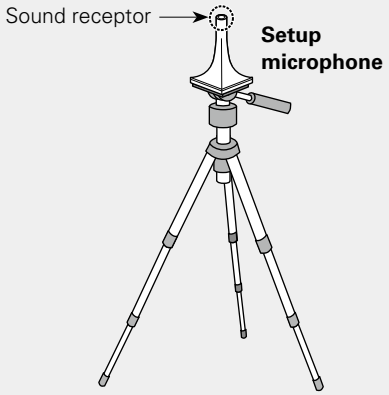
The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the setup microphone in the main listening position. Audyssey MultEQ® XT uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

☞ See overleaf

1 Prepare the included setup microphone

Mount the setup microphone on a tripod or stand and place it in the main listening position.

When placing the setup microphone, adjust the height of the sound receptor to the level of the listener's ear.



If you do not have a tripod or stand, set up the microphone on, for example, a seat without a back.

NOTE

- Do not hold the setup microphone in your hand during measurements.
- Avoid placing the setup microphone close to a seat back or wall as sound reflections may give inaccurate results.

2 Set up the subwoofer

If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

For details, see your subwoofer's manual.

❑ **When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**

Set the direct mode to "On" and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

❑ **When using a subwoofer without a direct mode**

Make the following settings:

- **Volume** : "12 o'clock position"
- **Crossover frequency** : "Maximum/Highest Frequency"
- **Low pass filter** : "Off"
- **Standby mode** : "Off"

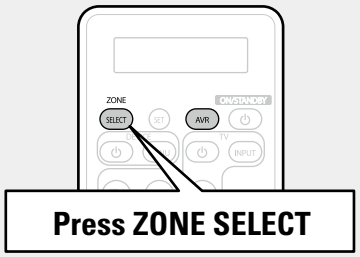
NOTE

When using 2 subwoofers at the same time, before starting Audyssey® Setup. adjust the volume of the subwoofers by using "Subwoofer Level" (☞page 111) from the menu. You cannot set the volume for individual subwoofers.

3 Set up the remote control unit

❑ **Set up the zone mode**

Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".

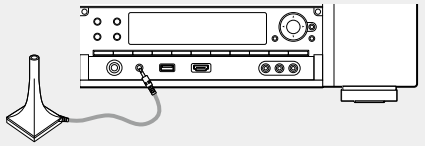


NOTE

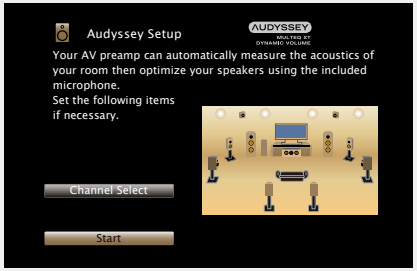
When using a remote control with preset codes registered (☞page 143), press **AVR** to set the remote control to the AVR-operation mode before operation.

Preparation

4 Connect the setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.

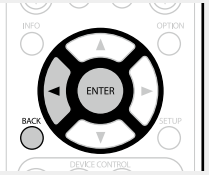


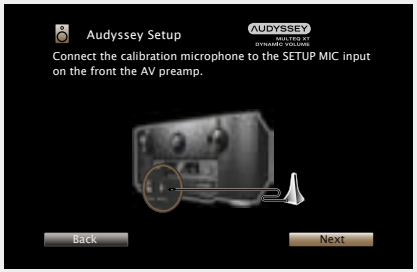
- If unused channels are set with "Channel Select", measuring time can be shortened. For setting, perform steps 3 to 9 of "Set up "Channel Select"" (☞page 88).

☞ See overleaf

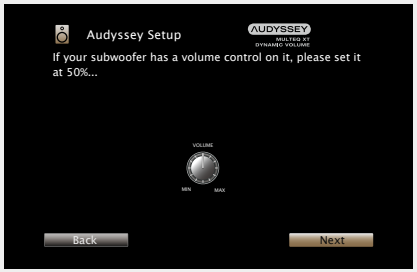
Preparation (Continued)

5 **Select “Start” and then press ENTER.**





6 **Select “Next” and then press ENTER.**
The subwoofer volume setting screen is displayed.



Detection & Measurement (Main)

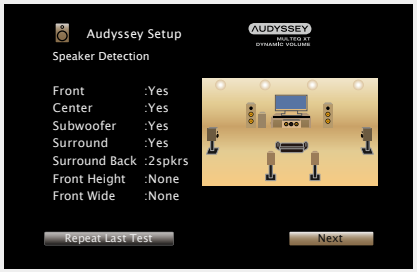
This step automatically checks the speaker configuration and speaker size, and calculates the channel level, distance, and crossover frequency.
It also corrects distortion in the listening area.

7 **Select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.**
When measuring begins, a test tone is output from each speaker.

- Measurement requires several minutes.

8 **The detected speakers are displayed.**

- The illustration below shows an example of when the front speakers, center speaker, subwoofer, surround speakers and surround back speakers have been detected.



NOTE

If a connected speaker is not displayed, the speaker may not be connected correctly. Check the speaker connection.

9 **Select “Next” and then press ENTER.**

NOTE

If “Caution!” is displayed on TV screen:
Go to “Error messages” (☞page 34). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
If the problem is resolved, return and restart “Audyssey® Setup”.

Going back to the previous screen

Select “Back” and then press **ENTER**.

When measuring has stopped

① Press **BACK** to display the popup screen.
② Press ◁ to select “Yes”, and then press **ENTER**.

Setting up the speakers again

Repeat the operation from step 4.

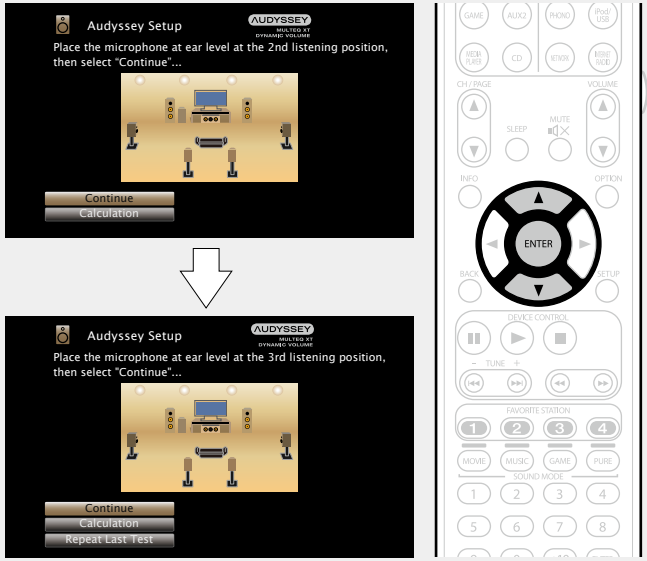
☞ See overleaf

Measurement (2nd – 8th)

- In this step, you will perform measurements at multiple positions (two to eight positions) other than the main listening position.
- Just one position can be measured but measuring multiple positions increases the accuracy of the correction of acoustic distortion within the listening area.

10 Move the setup microphone to position 2, select "Continue", and then press ENTER.

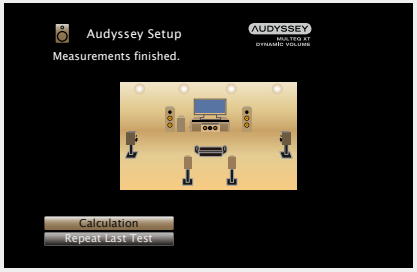
The measurement of the second position starts. Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



- To skip measuring the third and subsequent listening position, use △▽ to select "Calculation" and press **ENTER** to proceed to step 13.
- To measure the second position again, use △▽ to select "Repeat Last Test" and press **ENTER**.

11 Repeat step 10, measuring positions 3 to 8.

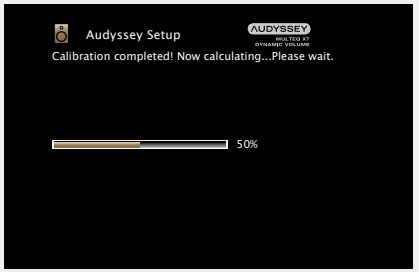
When measurement of position 8 is completed, a "Measurements finished." message is displayed.



Calculation

12 Select "Calculation" and then press ENTER.

Measuring results are analyzed, and the frequency response of each speaker in the listening room is determined.

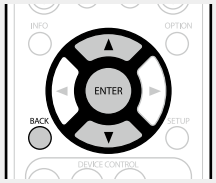


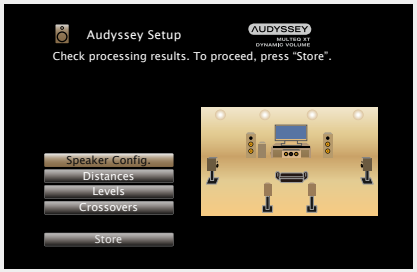
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

See overleaf

Check

13 Use △▽ to select the item you want to check, and then press ENTER.





- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.
- If you want to check another item, press **BACK**.

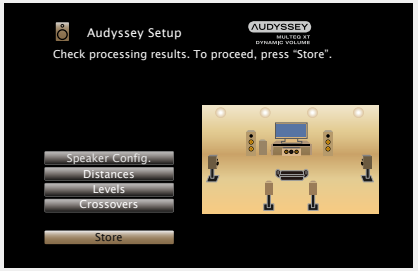
NOTE

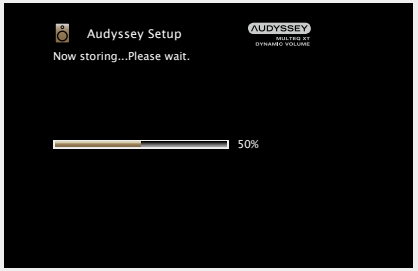
- If the result differs from the actual connection status, or if "Caution!" is displayed, see "Error messages" (☞page 34). Then carry out Audyssey® Setup again.
- If you change speaker positions or orientation, perform Audyssey® Setup again to find the optimal equalizer settings.

Store

14 Select "Store" and then press ENTER.

Save the measurement results.





- Saving the results requires about 10 seconds.
- During saving of measurements results, "Now storing...Please wait." is displayed. When saving is completed, "Storing complete. Audyssey® Setup is now finished. Please unplug microphone." is displayed.

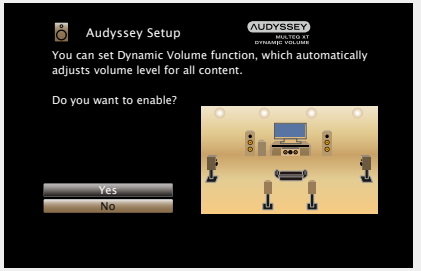
NOTE

During saving of measurement results, be sure not to turn off the power.

Finish

15 Unplug the setup microphone from the unit's SETUP MIC jack.

16 Set Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.



- This feature adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

❑ When turning Dynamic Volume on

- Press △ to select "Yes", and then press **ENTER**.
  The unit automatically enters "Medium" (☞page 113) mode.

❑ When turning Dynamic Volume off

- Press ▽ to select "No", and then press **ENTER**.

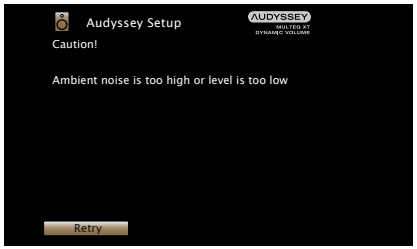
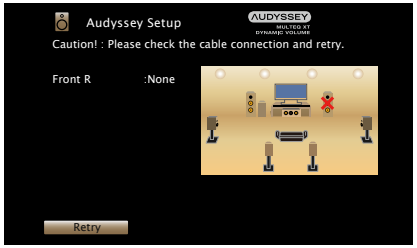
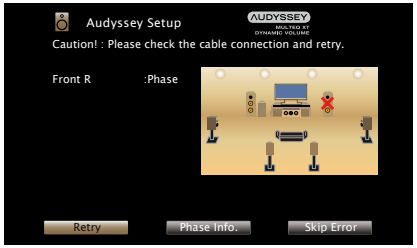
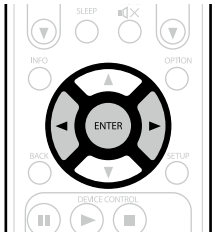
NOTE

After performing Audyssey® Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey® Setup again.

Error messages

NOTE

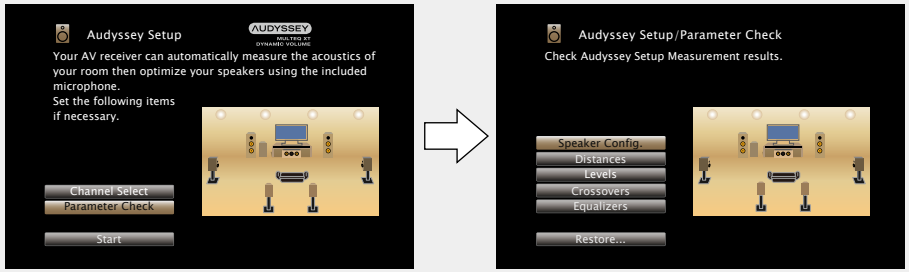
- An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Then perform Audyssey® Setup again.
- If the result still differs from the actual connection status after c or the error message still appears, it is possible that the speakers are not connected properly. Turn this unit off, check the speaker connections and repeat the measurement process from the beginning.
- Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
	• The connected setup microphone is broken, or a device other than the supplied setup microphone is connected. • Not all speakers could be detected.	• Connect the included setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit. • Check the speaker connections.
	• There is too much noise in the room for accurate measurements to be made. • Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low for accurate measurements to be made.	• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. • Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. • Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. • Adjust the subwoofer's volume.
	• The displayed speaker could not be detected. (The screen on the left indicates that the front right speaker cannot be detected.)	• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.
	• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed. (The screen on the left indicates that the polarity phases of the front right speakers are reversed.)	• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker. • For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, use ◁ ▷ to select "Skip Error", then press **ENTER**. 

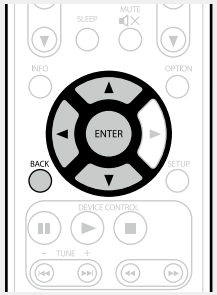
Parameter Check

This function enables you to check the measurement results and equalizer characteristics after Audyssey® Setup.

1 **Use △▽ to select "Parameter Check" and then press ENTER.**



2 **Use △▽ to select the item you want to check, then press ENTER.**
Measurement results for each speaker are displayed.



Speaker Config.	Check the speaker configuration.
Distances	Check the speaker distance.
Levels	Check the speaker channel level.
Crossovers	Check the speaker crossover frequency.
Equalizers	Check the equalizer.

- If "Equalizers" is selected, press △▽ to select equalizing curve ("Audyssey" or "Audyssey Flat") to be checked.
  Use △▽ to switch the display between the different speakers.

3 **Press ◁ or BACK.**
The confirmation screen reappears. Repeat step 2.

Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set "Restore..." to "Yes", you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT) even when you have changed each setting manually.

Making the network settings (Network)

GUI

This unit can be connected to a home network (LAN) to listen to Internet radio or play back music files and still image (JPEG) files stored on a computer.

1 **Connect the Ethernet cable (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").**

2 **Turn on this unit (☞page 36).**
This unit performs automatic network setup due to the DHCP function.
When connecting to a network that has no DHCP function, perform the setting in "Settings" (☞page 132).

Playback (Basic operation)

Setup (☞page 29)

- ❑ **Turning the power on** (☞page 36)
- ❑ **Selecting the input source** (☞page 36)
- ❑ **Adjusting the master volume** (☞page 37)
- ❑ **Turning off the sound temporarily** (☞page 37)

- ❑ **Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player** (☞page 37)
- ❑ **Playing Super Audio CD** (☞page 37)
- ❑ **Playing a CD player** (☞page 38)
- ❑ **Playing an iPod** (☞page 39)
- ❑ **Playing a USB memory device** (☞page 42)
- ❑ **Listening to HD Radio stations** (☞page 45)

- ❑ **Listening to internet radio** (☞page 54)
- ❑ **Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS** (☞page 57)
- ❑ **Using online services** (☞page 61)
- ❑ **Convenient functions** (☞page 71)
- ❑ **AirPlay function** (☞page 75)

Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (☞page 77)

Playback (Advanced operation) (☞page 92)

Important information

Before starting playback, make the connections between the different devices and the settings on the unit.

NOTE

Also refer to the operating instructions of the connected devices when playing them.

Turning the power on

Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

The power turns on.

You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ⏻ **ON/STANDBY** on the main unit.

❑ When power is switched to standby

Press **ON/STANDBY** ⏻.

[STANDBY indicator status in standby mode]

- Normal standby : Red
- When "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) is set to "On" : Orange
- When "IP Control" (☞page 131) is set to "Always On" : Orange

Selecting the input source

Press the input source select button (CBL/SAT, DVD, Blu-ray, AUX1, M-XP, TUNER, GAME, AUX2, PHONO, iPod/USB, MEDIA PLAYER, CD, NETWORK or INTERNET RADIO) to be played back.

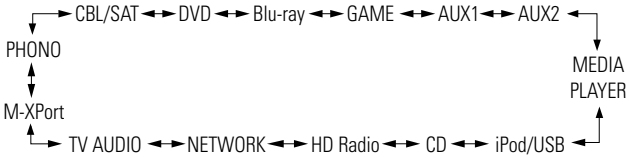
The desired input source can be selected directly.

You can also use the following operation to select an input source.

❑ Select the input source using the main unit

Turn **INPUT SELECTOR**.

- Turning **INPUT SELECTOR** switches the input source, as shown below.



Adjusting the master volume

Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- The volume display method varies depending on the "Scale" setting (☞page 112).

❑ **When the "Scale" setting (☞page 112) is "0 – 98"**

[Adjustable range] 0.0 | 0.5 – 98.0

❑ **When the "Scale" setting (☞page 112) is "–79.5dB – 18.0dB"**

[Adjustable range] ---.- | –79.5dB – 18.0dB

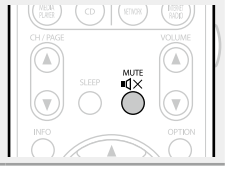
- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.

You can also adjust the master volume by turning **VOLUME** on the main unit.

Turning off the sound temporarily

Press MUTE 🔇.

- "MUTE" indicator on the display flashes.
- 🔇 appears on a TV screen.



- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" (☞page 112).
- To cancel, press **MUTE** 🔇 again. Muting can also be canceled by adjusting the master volume.

Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player

The following describes the procedure for playing Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.
③ Load the disc in the player.

2 Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press Blu-ray or DVD to switch an input source for a player used for playback.

4 Play the Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player.

- Make the necessary settings on the player (language setting, subtitles setting, etc.) beforehand.

Playing Super Audio CD

The following describes the procedure for playing Super Audio CD.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Turn on the power of the subwoofer and player.
② Load the disc in the player.

2 Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

3 Perform the settings of the "Input Assign" menu (☞page 122).

Assign HDMI connectors for the input source (example: DVD).

4 Press the input source select button (example: DVD) to switch an input source assigned in step 3 - ①.

5 Set the audio input mode to "Auto" using the "Input Mode" menu (☞page 124).

- The default setting of "Input Mode" is "Auto".

6 Play the component connected to this unit.

The DSD indicator lights on the display.

When playing back Super Audio CD, DSD signals are converted into PCM signals which are then converted into analog signals.

Playing a CD player

The following describes the procedure for playing CD player.

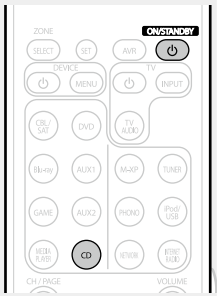
1 **Prepare for playback.**

① Turn on the power of the subwoofer and player.

② Load the disc in the player.

2 **Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

3 **Press CD to switch the input source to “CD”.**



4 **Play the CD player.**

Playing an iPod

You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit's iPod/USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod.
For information on the iPod models that can be played back with this unit, see "Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the iPod/USB port" (☞page 20).

Listening to music on an iPod

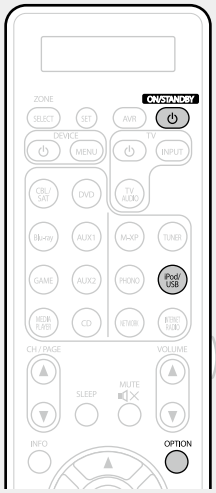
The iPod display modes include "Direct Mode" and "Remote Mode". By default, "Direct Mode", where you directly operate iPod itself while seeing the iPod screen, is set.
To change to "Remote Mode", where you perform operations while having the iPod information displayed on the TV screen, see "Setting "Remote Mode" (Operation Mode)" (☞page 40).

1 **Using the USB cable provided with the iPod, connect the iPod to the iPod/USB port (☞page 20).**

2 **Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

3 **Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to "iPod/USB".**
"Remote iPod" is displayed on the display of this unit.
• Nothing is displayed on the TV screen.

4 **Operate iPod itself directly while seeing the iPod screen to play back music.**



❑ **Streaming music stored in iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad directly to the unit** (☞page 75)

❑ **Playing iTunes music with this unit** (☞page 75)

Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

❑ **Setting "Remote Mode" (Operation Mode)** (☞page 40)

❑ **Performing repeat playback (Repeat)** (☞page 41)

❑ **Performing random playback (Random)** (☞page 41)

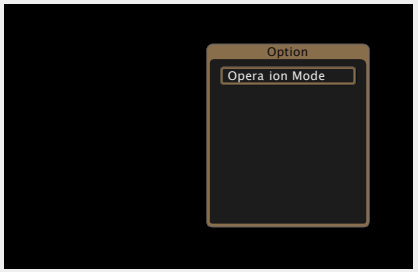
❑ Setting “Remote Mode” (Operation Mode)

In this mode, various lists and screens during playback on iPod are displayed on the TV screen.
This section describes the steps up to playing back tracks on iPod in “Remote Mode”.

1 **Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.**

2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Select “Operation Mode”, then press ENTER.**
The “Operation Mode” screen is displayed.



4 **Use ◁ ▷ to select “Remote Mode”, then press ENTER.**
The iPod screen is displayed.

- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).
- Operations available for “Direct Mode” and “Remote Mode” are listed below.

Display mode		Direct Mode	Remote Mode
Playable files	Music file	✓	✓
	Video file	*	
Active buttons	Remote control unit (This unit)	✓	✓
	iPod	✓	

* Only the sound is played.

5 **Use △▽ to select the item, then press ENTER or ▷ to select the file to be played.**

6 **Press ENTER, ▷ or ►.**
Playback starts.

❑ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at “M-DAX” (☞page 111) in the menu.
You can use the “M-DAX” function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is “Off”.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at “Audio Display” (☞page 120) in the menu.
The default setting is “30s”.
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

❑ Switching the screen display

In Remote Mode, press **STATUS** on the main unit during playback.
The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title etc. each time the button is pressed.

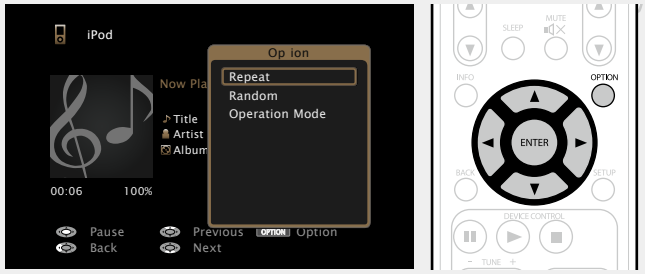
NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

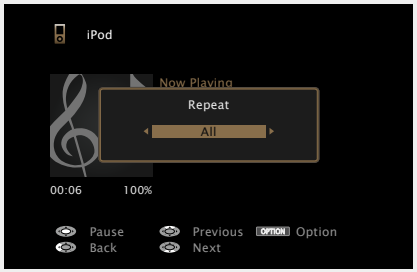
❑ Performing repeat playback (Repeat)

1 **Press OPTION while in Remote Mode.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.**



3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select repeat playback mode.**



• Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off ⟷ One ⟷ All

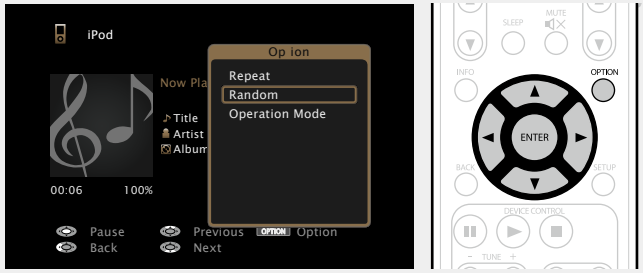
Off	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
One	A file being played is played repeatedly.
All	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

4 **Press ENTER.**
The display returns to the playback screen.

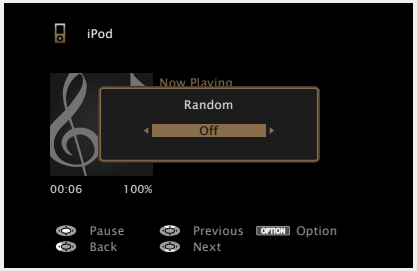
❑ Performing random playback (Random)

1 **Press OPTION while in Remote Mode.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Random”, then press ENTER.**



3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select random playback mode.**



• Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

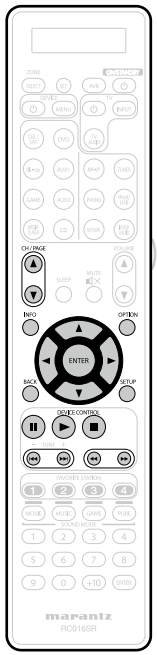
Off ⟷ On

Off	Disable random playback.
On	Enable random playback.

4 **Press ENTER.**
The display returns to the playback screen.

The random playback randomly selects a track to play back from all tracks every time a track ends. Therefore, the same track may be played back consecutively.

❑ iPod operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Remote / Direct Mode switching / Repeat playback / Random playback
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽) / Manual search (Press and hold, △▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
II	Pause
►	Playback / Pause
■	Stop
I◄◄ ►►I	Auto search (cue)
◄◄ ►► (Press and hold)	Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)

Playing a USB memory device

Playing back music or still picture (JPEG) files recorded on a USB memory device.

Important information

- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class and MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in "FAT16" or "FAT32" format.
- This unit is compatible with MP3 files conforming to "MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3" standards.
- File types that this unit can play back and specifications are shown below.

【Supported file types】

Supported file types	USB memory devices *1
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	✓*2
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	✓
WAV	✓
MPEG-4 AAC	✓*3
FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)	✓
JPEG	✓

*1 USB memory device
- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- WAV format Quantization bit length: 16 bits.
- FLAC format Quantization bit length: 16 or 24 bits.

*2 Copyright-protected files can be played on certain portable players compatible with MTP.

*3 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

NOTE

File types that this unit does not support are not displayed.

【Compatible formats】

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/ 176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/ 176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC (Apple Lossless Audio Codec) *	32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz	–	.m4a

* Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings. Inc.]
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

❑ Maximum Number of Playable Files and Folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item \ Media	USB memory devices
Memory capacity	FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB
Number of folder directory levels *1	8 levels
Number of folders	500
Number of files *2	5000

*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

Playing files stored on USB memory devices

1 **Connect the USB memory device to the iPod/USB port (☞page 20).**

2 **Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to "iPod/USB".**

3 **Use △▽ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or ▷.**

4 **Use △▽ to select the file, then press ENTER, ▷ or ►.**
Playback starts.

❑ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (☞page 111) in the menu.
You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (☞page 120) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.
- If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only the first partition is played back.

NOTE

- Note that marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or be supplied power. When using a USB portable hard disk that can draw power from an AC adapter, we recommend using the AC adapter.
- It is not possible to connect and use a computer via the iPod/USB port of this unit using a USB cable.

Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

- ❑ **Searching content with keywords (Text Search)** (☞page 71)
- ❑ **Performing repeat playback (Repeat)** (☞page 72)
- ❑ **Performing random playback (Random)** (☞page 72)
- ❑ **Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)** (☞page 74)
- ❑ **Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow)** (☞page 74)

❑ USB memory device operation buttons

Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Text Search / Repeat playback / Random playback / Picture View / Slideshow
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
II	Pause
►	Playback / Pause
■	Stop
I◄◄ ►►I	Auto search (cue)

Listening to HD Radio stations

For antenna connections, see “Connecting an HD Radio receiver” (☞page 23).

Important information

❑ Using the HD Radio™ receiver

HD Radio stations offer higher sound quality than conventional FM/ AM broadcasts. It is also possible to receive data services and select broadcasts from among up to eight multicast programs.
HD Radio Technology provides higher quality sound than conventional broadcasts and allows reception of data services.

Digital Sound

- Digital, CD-quality sound. HD Radio Technology enables local radio stations to broadcast a clean digital signal. AM sounds like today’s FM and FM sounds like a CD.

PSD

- Program Service Data: Contributes to the superior user experience of HD Radio Technology. Presents song name, artist, station IDs, and other relevant data streams.

HD2/HD3

- Adjacent to traditional main stations are extra local FM channels. These HD2/HD3 Channels provide new, original music as well as deep cuts into traditional genre.

HD Radio®
This HD Radio receiver enables:
PSD
HD2/HD3
Digital Sound

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and “Arc” logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

For detailed information on HD Radio Technology, please go to “www.hdradio.com/”.

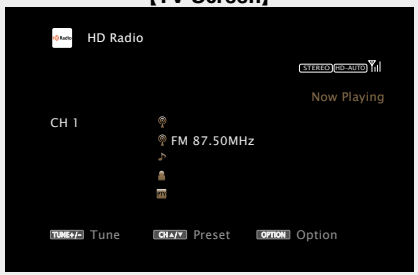
How to tune in

The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of “Auto” mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and “Manual” mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is “Auto”. You can also use “Direct Tune” to tune in by entering the frequency directly.
In “Auto” mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the “Manual” mode or “Direct Tune” to tune in.

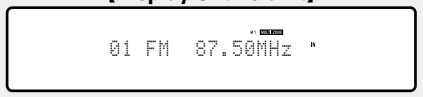
Listening to HD Radio stations

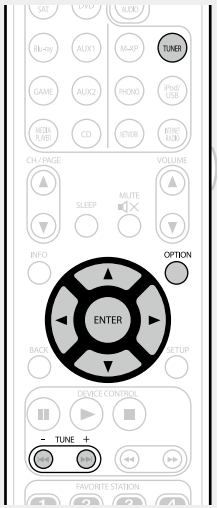
1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to “HD Radio”.**

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】



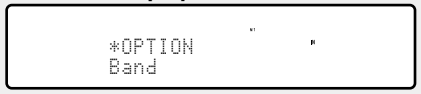


2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Use △▽ to select “Band”, then press ENTER.**
The Band screen is displayed.

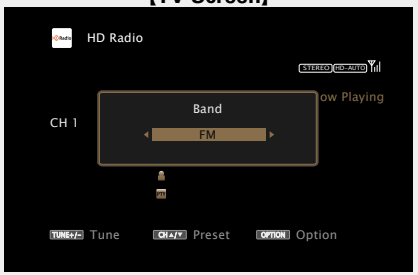
【TV Screen】

【Display of this unit】

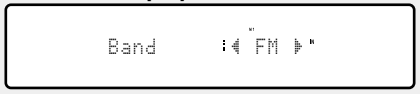


4 **Use ◁ ▷ to select “FM” or “AM”, then press ENTER.**

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】



FM	When listening to an FM broadcast.
AM	When listening to an AM broadcast.

5 **Press TUNE + or TUNE – to select the station you want to hear.**
Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.

- If the desired station cannot be tuned in with auto tuning, tune it in manually.
- When tuning in stations manually, press and hold **TUNE +** or **TUNE –** to change frequencies continuously.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at “Audio Display” (☞page 120) in the menu. The default setting is “30s”.
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

❑ Adding to the FAVORITE STATION button

(☞page 73)

Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

- ❑ **Tuning in by entering the radio frequency (Direct Tune)** (☞page 48)
- ❑ **Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)** (☞page 50)
- ❑ **Changing the tuning mode (Tune Mode)** (☞page 47)
- ❑ **Tuning in to radio stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)** (☞page 49)
- ❑ **Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)** (☞page 51)
- ❑ **Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)** (☞page 52)

☞ See overleaf

❑ Changing the tuning mode (Tune Mode)

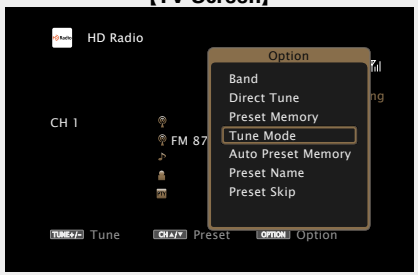
You can change the mode for tuning into FM/AM broadcasts.

1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to “HD Radio”.**

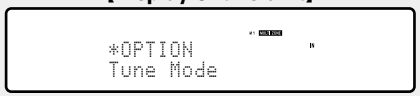
2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

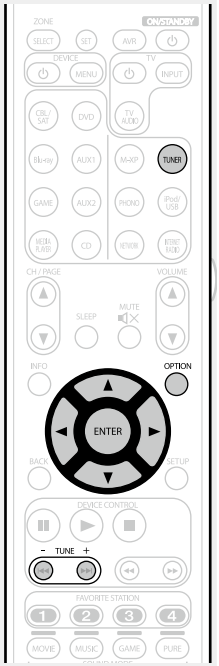
3 **Use △▽ to select “Tune Mode”, then press ENTER.**

【TV Screen】



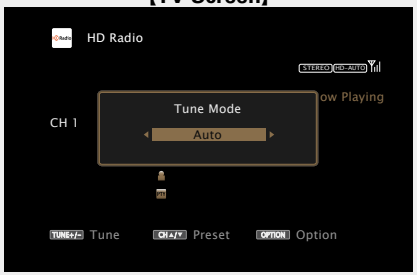
【Display of this unit】





4 **Use ◁ ▷ to select tuning mode, then press ENTER.**

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】

Auto	Automatically tune to the station.
HD-Auto	Automatically tune to the HD Radio station.
Analog-Auto	Automatically tune to an analog station and analog HD Radio station.
Manual	Manually tune to the station.
Analog-Manual	Manually tune to an analog station and analog HD Radio station.

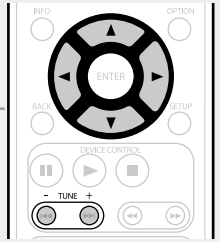
When tuning in stations manually, press and hold **TUNE +** or **TUNE –** to change frequencies continuously.

❑ Selecting audio programs

HD Radio Technology enables stations to broadcast multiple Audio Program and data services on HD2 / HD3 / HD4 channels.

1 **Select the tuning mode (“HD-AUTO”, “AUTO” or “MANUAL”).**

2 **Press TUNE + or TUNE – to tune in the desired Multicast channel.**



- If the station you are tuning in has multiple audio programs, “HD1” is indicated on the display.
  If it only has one audio program, “HD” is indicated.
- When the unit receives multicast channels, the multicast program number (HD2) is displayed to the right of the station name.

NOTE

- This function is not available for AM HD Radio stations because they cannot broadcast multicast channels.
- If digital audio data cannot be received after the station is selected, or if the station signal is weak, the unit may not be able to receive the multicast channels.
- If the station signal is weak, the digital audio of the multicast channel may cut out.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at “Audio Display” (☞page 120) in the menu. The default setting is “30s”.
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

❑ Tuning in by entering the radio frequency (Direct Tune)

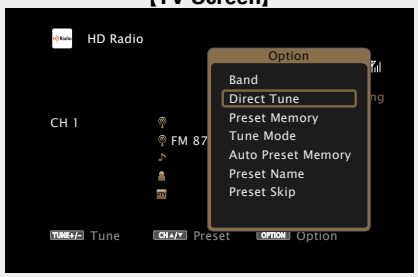
You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to "HD Radio".**

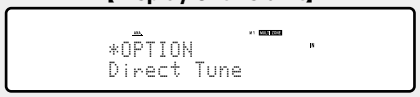
2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

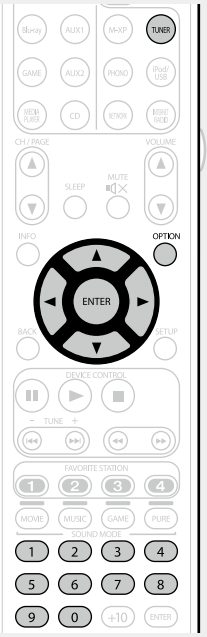
3 **Use △▽ to select "Direct Tune", then press ENTER.**
The direct tuner screen is displayed and "–" in the display flashes.

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】





4 **Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select a number and press ▷.**
The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.

【TV Screen】

【Display of this unit】

• If ◁ is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.

5 **Repeat step 4 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.**

6 **When setting is completed, press ENTER.**
The preset frequency is tuned in.

Presetting broadcast stations

❑ Tuning in to radio stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

Up to 56 stations can be preset.
If "Auto Preset Memory" is performed after performing "Preset Memory", the "Preset Memory" settings will be overwritten.

1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to "HD Radio".**

2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

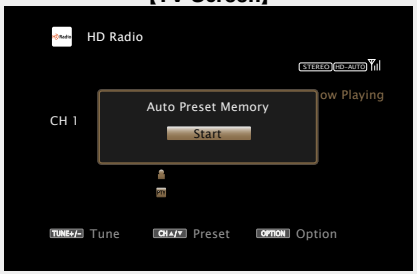
3 **Use △▽ to select "Auto Preset Memory", then press ENTER.**

【TV Screen】

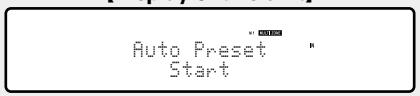
【Display of this unit】

4 **Press ENTER.**
The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】



- When presetting is completed, "Completed" is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.

See overleaf

❑ Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily. Up to 56 stations can be preset.

1 Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.

2 Press OPTION.

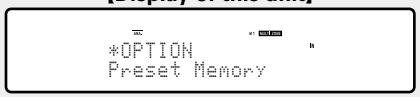
The option menu screen is displayed.

3 Use △▽ to select "Preset Memory", then press ENTER.

The list of already preset channels is displayed.

【TV Screen】

【Display of this unit】

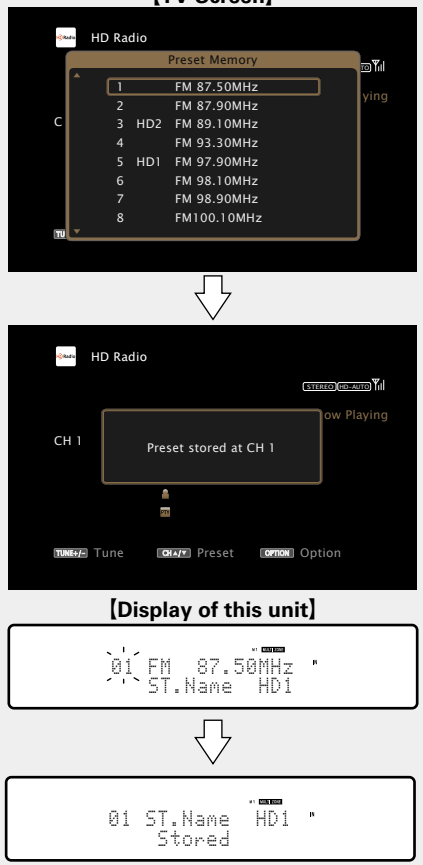


4 Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.

The current broadcast station that is preset.

• To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】

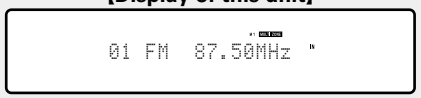
The channel numbers of broadcast stations set as "Preset Skip" (☞page 52) are grayed out, but these stations can be preset.
When grayed out channel numbers are preset, these are highlighted and the "Preset Skip" setting changes to "On".

Channel	Default Settings
1 – 8	87.50 / 87.90 / 89.10 / 93.30 / 97.90 / 98.10 / 98.90 / 100.10 MHz
9 – 16	101.90 / 102.70 / 107.90 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz
17 – 24	530 / 600 / 930 / 1000 / 1120/ 1210 / 1400 / 1710 kHz
25 – 32	90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz
33 – 40	90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz
41 – 48	90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz
49 – 56	90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz

Listening to preset stations

Use CH/PAGE ▲▼ or 0 – 9 to select the desired preset channel.

【Display of this unit】



❑ Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it. Up to eight characters can be input.

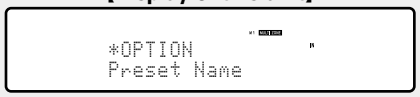
1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to "HD Radio".**

2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Use △▽ to select "Preset Name", then press ENTER.**
The Preset Name screen is displayed.

【TV Screen】

【Display of this unit】

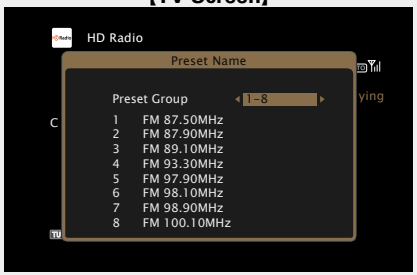


4 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name then press ENTER.**
The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed.

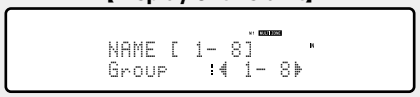
- Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

1 – 8 ◄► 9 – 16 ◄► 17 – 24 ◄► 25 – 32 ◄►
49 – 56 ◄► 41 – 48 ◄► 33 – 40 ◄

【TV Screen】



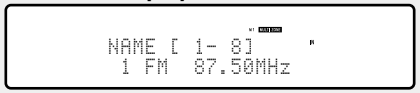
【Display of this unit】



5 **Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

【TV Screen】

【Display of this unit】



6 **Use △▽ to select a name label, then press ENTER.**
The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed.

- If you select "Set Defaults", then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

7 **Enter the characters, then press OK.**

- For character input, see page 107.

8 **Press BACK twice.**
The display returns to the playback screen.

❑ Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

You can set in advance, the stations you do not want to be displayed when tuning in, by groups or by stations.
The preset skip setting is useful when tuning in, because only your favorite stations are displayed.

1 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to "HD Radio".**

2 **Press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Use △▽ to select "Preset Skip", then press ENTER.**
The Preset Skip screen is displayed.

[TV Screen]

[Display of this unit]

4-1 **[To set the stations you want to skip by groups]**

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

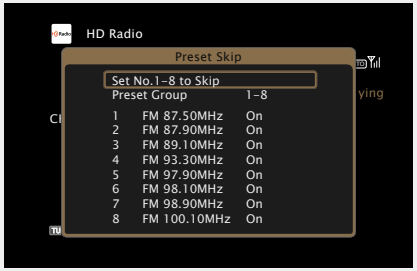
- Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

1 – 8 ↔ 9 – 16 ↔ 17 – 24 ↔ 25 – 32
49 – 56 ↔ 41 – 48 ↔ 33 – 40

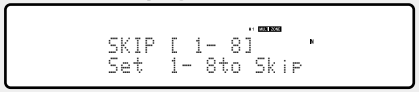
② Press △ to select "Set ＊ – ＊ to Skip", then press ENTER.
All broadcast stations in the group "＊ – ＊" you selected are not displayed.
(＊ are the selected group numbers)

③ Press BACK.

[TV Screen]



[Display of this unit]



4-2 **[To set the stations you want to skip by stations]**

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

- Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

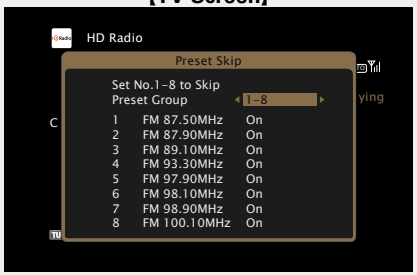
1 – 8 ↔ 9 – 16 ↔ 17 – 24 ↔ 25 – 32
49 – 56 ↔ 41 – 48 ↔ 33 – 40

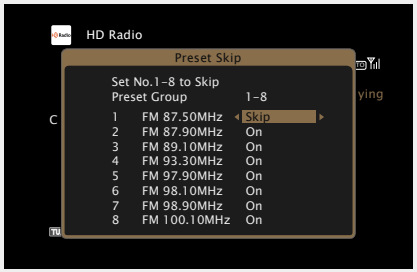
② Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to skip.

③ Use ◁ ▷ to select "Skip".
The station you selected is not displayed.

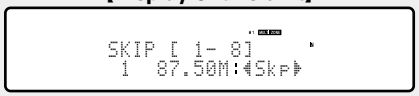
④ Press BACK.

[TV Screen]





[Display of this unit]

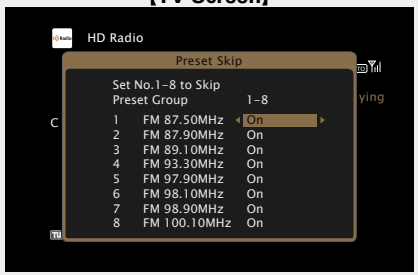


Cancelling preset skip

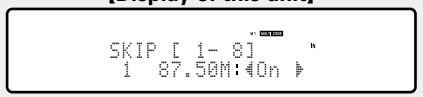
1 **While the Preset Skip screen is displayed, use ◁ ▷ to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**

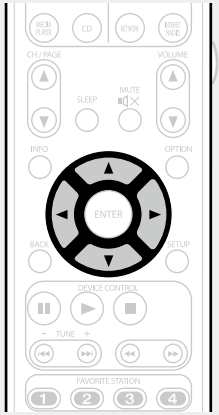
2 **Use △▽ to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**

【TV Screen】



【Display of this unit】





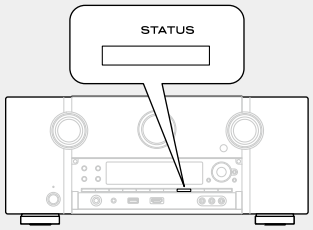
3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select "On".**
The skip is cancelled.

NOTE

You cannot cancel the skip for each group.

❑ Check the HD Radio reception information

Press STATUS on the main unit while an HD Radio broadcast is being received.
The current reception information is shown on the display.

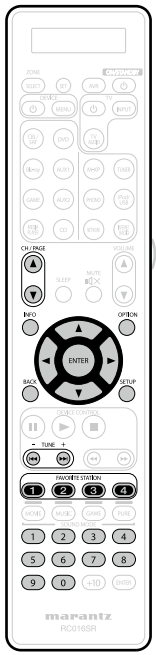


① Normal
↓
② Frequency / Signal strength
↓
③ Station name / Program and Program type
↓
④ Title name / Artist name
↓
⑤ Album name / Genre name

NOTE

If the station signal weakens while receiving a digital broadcast (while "HD" and text is displayed), the mode automatically switches to the analog reception mode (the reception frequency is displayed).
Because of this, the "HD" and text may flicker if the station signal level is weak and unstable.

❑ Tuner (HD Radio reception) operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Preset channel selection
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Switch tuning modes / Direct frequency tuning / Preset Memory / Auto Preset Memory / Preset Name / Preset Skip
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
TUNE +, –	Tuning (up/down) Multicast switching
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list
0 – 9	Preset channel selection (1 – 8) / Direct frequency tuning (0 – 9)

Listening to internet radio

Internet radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet radio stations from around the world can be received.

Important information

The broad cast station types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.

【Playable broadcast station types】

Supported file types	Internet radio
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	✓
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	✓

【Playable broadcast station specifications】

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3

Listening to internet radio

1 Prepare for playback.

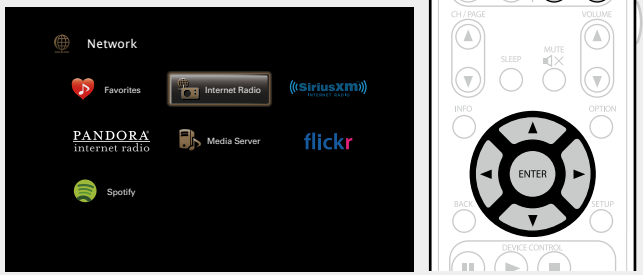
① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").

② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).

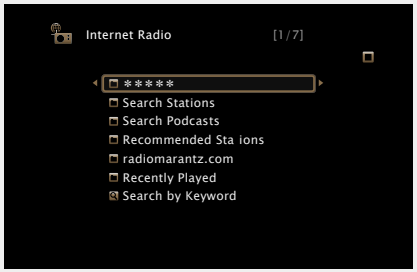
2 Press NETWORK.

• You can also press **INTERNET RADIO** to select the input source "Internet Radio" directly.

3 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Internet Radio", then press ENTER.



4 Use △▽ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or ▷.



***** (Country name)	Displays typical Internet radio stations your country.
Search Stations	Displays all Internet radio stations that this unit can tune in to.
Search Podcasts	Displays Internet radio stations in the podcasts that this unit can tune in to.
Recommended Stations	Displays recommended Internet radio stations.
radiomarantz.com	Displays Internet radio stations added to favorites in vTuner. For instructions on how to add to favorites in vTuner, see "Using vTuner to add Internet radio stations to favorites" (☞page 56).
Recently Played	Displays recently played Internet radio stations. Up to 20 stations stored in "Recently Played".
Search by Keyword	Displays Internet radio stations searched by keyword. For character input, see page 107.

5 Repeat step 4 until the station list is displayed.

The station list is displayed.

6 Use △▽ to select the station, then press ENTER or ▷.

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

☞ See overleaf

❑ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (☞page 111) in the menu.
You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

❑ Switching the screen display

Press **STATUS** on the main unit.
The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the button is pressed.

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (☞page 120) in the menu.
The default setting is "30s".
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

- There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet, and the quality of the programs they broadcast as well as the bit rate of the tracks varies widely.
  Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but depending on the communication lines and server traffic, the music or audio signals being streamed may be interrupted. Inversely, lower bit rates mean a lower sound quality but less tendency for the sound to be interrupted.
- "Radio station server full" or "Connection down" is displayed if the station is busy or not broadcasting.
- On this unit, folder and file names can be displayed as titles. Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with "." (period).

NOTE

The radio station database service may be suspended without notice.

Operations available through the OPTION button

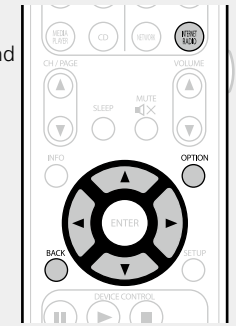
Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

- ❑ **Searching content with keywords (Text Search)** (☞page 71)
- ❑ **Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory)** (☞page 73)
- ❑ **Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)** (☞page 74)

❑ Playing the last played Internet radio station

This unit memorizes the last played Internet radio station. If you press **INTERNET RADIO** to switch to the Internet radio function from another input source, the last Internet radio station you listened to is played.

Press INTERNET RADIO.
The source switches to "Internet Radio" and the last played radio station plays.



❑ Using vTuner to add Internet radio stations to favorites

There are many Internet radio stations in the world, and this unit can tune into these stations. But finding the radio station you want to hear may be difficult, because there are too many stations. If this is the case, then please use vTuner, an Internet radio station search website specifically designed for this unit. You can use your PC to search Internet radio stations and add them as your favorites. This unit can play radio stations added to vTuner.

1 Check the MAC address of this unit (☞page 131).
The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed.
MAC address:

- The MAC address is necessary when you create an account for vTuner.

2 Use your PC to access the vTuner website (http://www.radiomarantz.com).
The vTuner login screen is displayed.

3 Enter the MAC address of this unit, then click "Go".
The account creation screen is displayed.

4 Enter your E-mail address and a password of your choice.
The account is registered and you can now log in.

5 Enter your account information (E-mail address and password) and log in.
The top menu of vTuner is displayed.

6 Select the search criteria (genre, region, language, etc.) of your choice.
The list of radio stations matching the criteria is displayed.

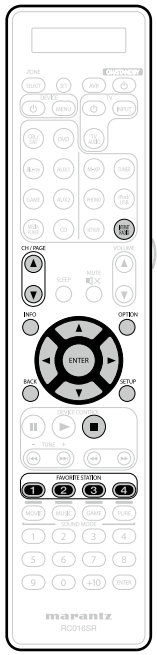
- You can also enter a keyword to search for a station you want to hear.

7 Select the radio station of your choice from the list, and then click the Add to Favorites icon.
The screen that lets you create a favorite group is displayed.

8 Enter the name of the favorite group, then click "Go".
A new favorite group that includes the selected radio station is created.

- Internet radio stations added to favorites in vTuner can be played from "radiomarantz.com" (☞page 54) with this unit.

❑ Internet radio operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
INTERNET RADIO	Last played internet radio station
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Text Search / Favorite Memory / Picture View
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
■	Stop
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list

Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a PC and on Network Attached Storage (NAS) that supports DLNA.

Important information

- The network audio playback function of this unit connects to the server using technologies shown below.
  - Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
  - Windows Media DRM10
- File types that this unit can play back and specifications are shown below.

[Supported file types]

Supported file types	Media server *1
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	✓
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	✓
WAV	✓
MPEG-4 AAC	✓*2
FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)	✓
JPEG	✓

A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

*1 Media server
- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- WAV format Quantization bit length: 16 bits.
- FLAC format Quantization bit length: 16 or 24 bits.

*2 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

NOTE

File types that this unit does not support are not displayed.

[Specifications of supported files]

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA (Windows Media Audio)	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/ 176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/ 176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC (Apple Lossless Audio Codec) *	32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz	–	.m4a

* Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings. Inc.]
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

Applying media sharing settings

Here, we apply the settings to share music files stored on a PC and NAS on the network.

❑ Sharing media stored in PC

If you are using a media server, be sure to apply this setting first.

When using Windows Media Player 12 (Windows 7)

NOTE

Perform this procedure after changing the control panel display to "Category".

1. **In the PC's "Control Panel", select "Network and Internet" - "Choose homegroup and sharing options".**
2. **Select the "Stream my pictures, music, and videos to all devices on my home network" check box and select "Choose media streaming options".**
3. **Select "Allowed" in the drop-down list for "AV7701".**
4. **Select "Allowed" in the drop-down list for "Media programs on this PC and remote connections...".**
5. **Click "OK" to finish.**

When using Windows Media Player 11

1. **Start up Windows Media Player 11 on the PC.**
2. **Select "Media Sharing" in the "Library".**
3. **Click the "Share my media" check box, select "AV7701", and then click "Allow".**
4. **As you did in step 3, select the icon of the device (other PCs and mobile devices) you want to use as a media controller, and then click "Allow".**
5. **Click "OK" to finish.**

Sharing media stored in NAS

Change settings on the NAS to allow this unit and other devices (PCs and mobile devices) used as media controllers to access the NAS. For details, see the owner's manual that came with the NAS.

Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").

② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).

③ Prepare the computer (☞Computer's operating instructions).

2 Press NETWORK.

3 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Media Server", then press ENTER.

4 Use △▽ to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER or ▷.

5 Use △▽ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or ▷.

6 Repeat step 4 until the file is displayed.

7 Use △▽ to select the file, then press ENTER or ▷.

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

❑ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (☞page 111) in the menu.

You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

❑ Switching the screen display

Press **STATUS** on the main unit.

The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the button is pressed.

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (☞page 120) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver. 11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player Ver. 11 or later.

NOTE

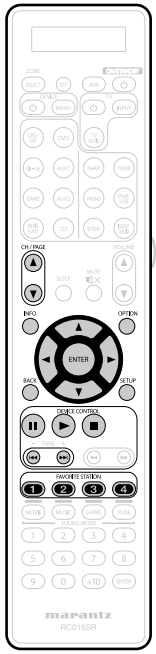
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/ files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

- ❑ **Searching content with keywords (Text Search)** (☞page 71)
- ❑ **Performing repeat playback (Repeat)** (☞page 72)
- ❑ **Performing random playback (Random)** (☞page 72)
- ❑ **Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory)** (☞page 73)
- ❑ **Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)** (☞page 74)
- ❑ **Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow)** (☞page 74)

❑ Media server operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Text Search / Repeat playback / Random playback / Favorite Memory / Picture View / Slideshow
△▽◁▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
II	Pause
▶	Playback / Pause
■	Stop
I◀◀ ▶▶I	Auto search (cue)
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list

Using online services

This unit supports playback of the online services shown below.

❑ About Flickr (☞page 62)

Flickr is an online photograph sharing service that started in 2004. You can use the this unit to view photographs that have been made public by Flickr users. You do not need an account to use Flickr. To view photographs that you recorded yourself, you need an account in order to upload these photographs to the Flickr server. For details, see the Flickr homepage.
http://www.flickr.com/

❑ About Pandora® (☞page 64)

Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet radio service created by the Music Genome Project.
To listen to Pandora you will need a free Pandora account. If you do not have a Pandora account, you can create one at www.pandora.com or from the Pandora smartphone application.
It is necessary to associate this machine with a Pandora account by visiting http://www.pandora.com/marantz from your PC.

❑ About SiriusXM (☞page 67)

Enjoy anywhere access to the unparalleled content of SiriusXM.
Whether on your computer, smartphone, tablet, Lynx Portable Enjoy anywhere access to the unparalleled content of SiriusXM.
Whether on your computer, smartphone, tablet, Lynx Portable Radio, or compatible Internet-connected device, you don't need to be in your vehicle to enjoy SiriusXM.
For details, see the SiriusXM homepage.
http://www.siriusxm.com

❑ About Spotify (☞page 69)

Introduce your marantz to a whole new world of music. With Spotify, you can enjoy instant access to millions of songs.
A Spotify Premium subscription is required.
For details, see the Spotify homepage.
http://www.spotify.com

Viewing photographs on the Flickr site

You can view photographs shared by particular users, or all of the photographs shared on Flickr.

❑ Viewing photographs shared by particular users

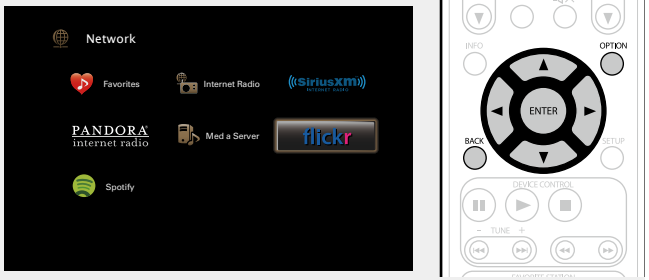
1 Prepare for playback.

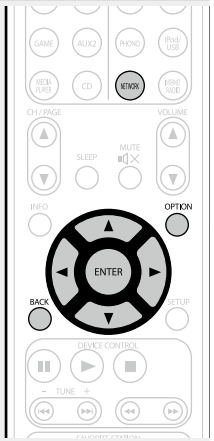
① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").

② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).

2 Press NETWORK.

3 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Flickr", then press ENTER.





4 Use △▽ to select "Add Flickr Contact", then press ENTER or ▷.

5 In "Contact", add the screen name (user name you want to view) you want to add.

• For character input, see page 107.

6 After inputting the "Contact", press OK.

The screen name is added to "Contact", and the screen name you entered in Step 5 is displayed on the top screen of Flickr.

• If you enter a screen name that does not exist, "The Flickr Contact you entered could not be found" is displayed. Check and enter the correct screen name.

7 Use △▽ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▷.

Favorites	Displays the favorite photographs of the specified user.
Photostream	Displays a list of shared photographs.
PhotoSets	Displays the folder (photograph album) list.
Contacts	Displays the screen name used by the specified user in Contacts.
Remove this Contact	Deletes a user from Flickr Contact.
Add this Contact	Adds a user from Flickr Contact.

8 Use △▽ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▷.

The selected file is displayed.

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

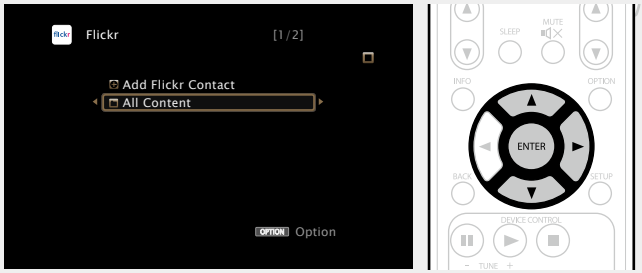
Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

❑ Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow) (☞page 74)

❑ Viewing all photographs on Flickr

1 Use △▽ to select “All Content”, then press ENTER or ▷.



2 Use △▽ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▷.

Interestingness	Displays photographs that are popular from the number of user comments or number of times they are added as favorites.
Recent	Displays the most recently added photographs.
Search by text	Search for photographs by keyword.

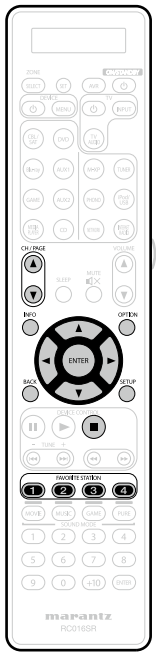
3 Use △▽ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▷.

The selected file is displayed.

NOTE

Depending on the file format, some photographs cannot be viewed.

❑ Flickr operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Slideshow
△▽◁▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
■	Stop
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list

Listening to Pandora®

1 Prepare for playback.

① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").

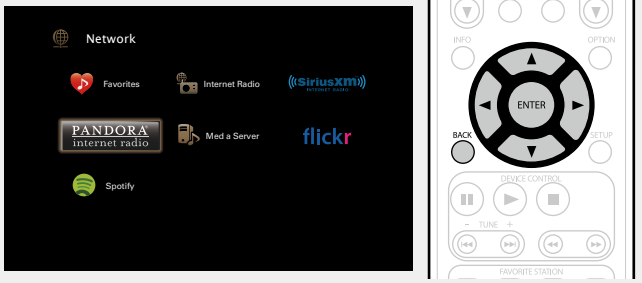
② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).

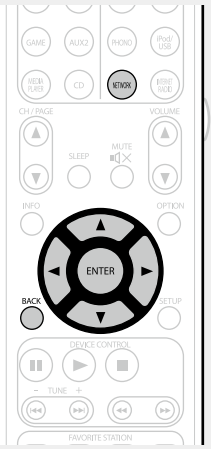
③ Complete step 4 and obtain a Pandora account.

- If you already have a Pandora account, you do not need to obtain a new account. Use your existing Pandora account.

2 Press NETWORK.

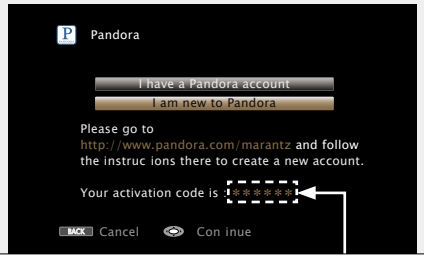
3 Use △▽◁▷ to select "Pandora", then press ENTER.





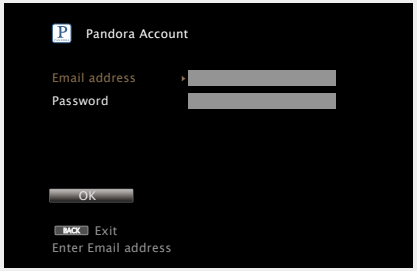
4 If you have a Pandora account, use △▽ to select "I have a Pandora account", then press ENTER or ▷.

- If you do not have a Pandora account, press ▽ to select "I am new to Pandora". The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press **ENTER**.



This is an identification code required to register your purchased product to the Pandora service.
This code is used to obtain your account.

5 Input "Email address" and "Password".



- For character input, see page 107.

6 After inputting the "Email address" and "Password", select "OK", then press ENTER.

If the "Email address" and "Password" match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.

NOTE

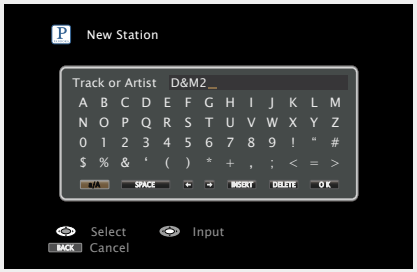
Press **BACK** to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

❑ Creating a new station

You can create up to 100 radio stations.

1 **Use △▽ to select “New Station”, then press ENTER or ▷.**

2 **Input a track or artist name, then press OK.**



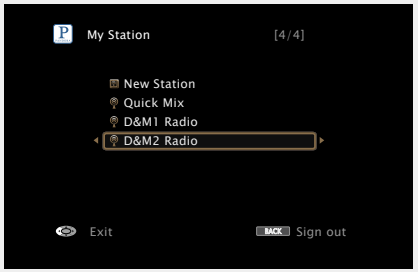
• For character input, see page 107.

3 **Use △▽ to select “Search by Artist” or “Search by Track”, then press ENTER.**

You can search and display a list by track or artist.

4 **Press △▽, select a file (e.g. D&M2) from the list, and press ENTER or ▷.**

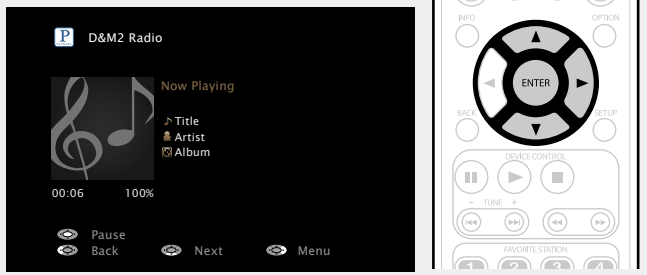
“Radio” is added to the end of a filename, and your new station is created (e.g. D&M2 Radio).



• Your new station will play music with similar qualities to the artist or track you entered.

❑ Listening to an existing station

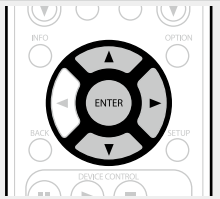
Use △▽ and select the radio station (“D&M2 Radio”) that you want to listen to, and press ENTER or ▷.



Listening to created radio stations at random

Use △▽ to select “Quick Mix”, then press ENTER or ▷.

Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.

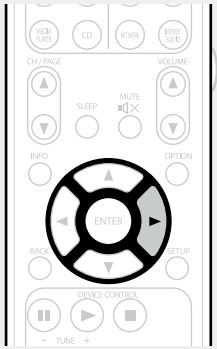


❑ Giving Feedback and Managing Stations

You can personalize your stations by providing feedback.

Press ▷ while a track is playing.

The Pandora menu screen is displayed.



I like this track	• Press when you like the track that is being played. • It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs up) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)
I don't like this track	• Press when you don't like the track that is being played. • It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs down) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)
Why is this track playing?	• Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.
Create station	• Creates a Station for the Track or Artist being played.
Bookmark this artist	• Bookmarks the artist currently being played. • You can check on a computer or iPhone etc. • For details, see the Pandora web page.
Bookmark this track	• Bookmarks the track currently being played. • You can check on a computer or iPhone etc. • For details, see the Pandora web page.
I'm tired of this track	• Press when you don't like the track that is being played. • The track will not be played for 1 month.
Delete this station	• Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.

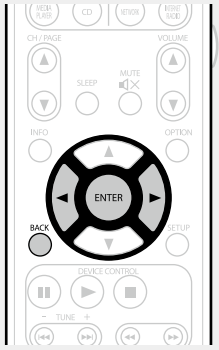
NOTE

- You can Skip up to 6 Tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.
- You can create up to 100 Stations (radio stations).

❑ Sign out

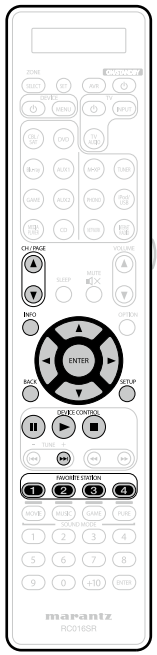
Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

1 While the Pandora top menu is displayed, press BACK.



2 When the popup menu appears, use ◁ ▷ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

❑ Pandora operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
△▽◁▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, ▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
II	Pause
►	Playback
■	Stop
►►I	Skips the current track, subject to skip limit
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list

Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio

Over 120 channels of the SiriusXM programming you love, including commercial-free music plus sports, talk, news and entertainment. Listen anywhere on your computer or smartphone.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").

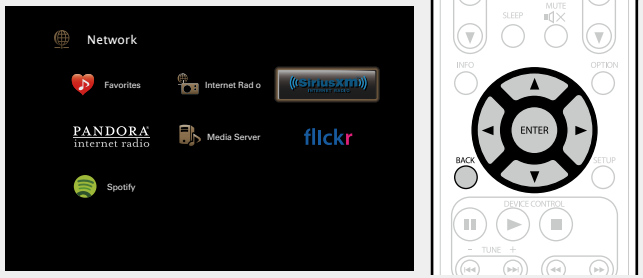
② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).

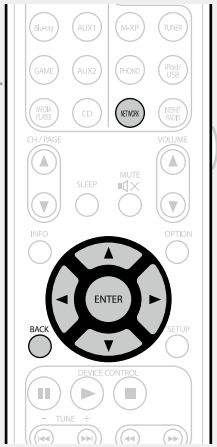
③ Access the following website from your PC and obtain a SiriusXM account.
http://www.siriusxm.com

- If you already have a SiriusXM account, you do not need to obtain a new account. Select "Sign in" in step 4, and enter your existing SiriusXM account.

2 Press NETWORK.

3 Use △▽◁▷ to select "SiriusXM", then press ENTER.





4 Select "Sign in", then press ENTER.

5 Input the "Username" and "Password".

- For character input, see page 107.

6 Select the "Sign in", and then press ENTER.

The top menu of SiriusXM is displayed.

7 Use △▽ to select the genre, then press ENTER or ▷.

8 Use △▽ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▷.

The selected file is displayed.

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

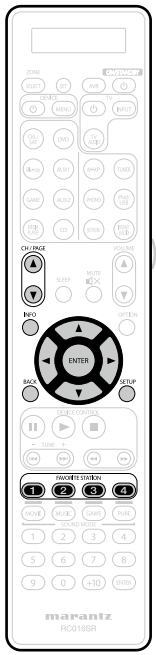
❑ Sign out

Disassociate this unit from your SiriusXM account.

1 **While the SiriusXM top menu is displayed, press BACK.**

2 **When the popup menu appears, use ◁ ▷ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.**

❑ SiriusXM operation buttons



Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
△▽◁▷	Cursor operation
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and release)	Call up favorites
FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 (Press and hold)	Add to the favorites list

Listening to Spotify

Introduce your marantz to a whole new world of music. With Spotify, you can enjoy instant access to millions of songs.
A Spotify Premium subscription is required.
For details, see the Spotify homepage.
http://www.spotify.com

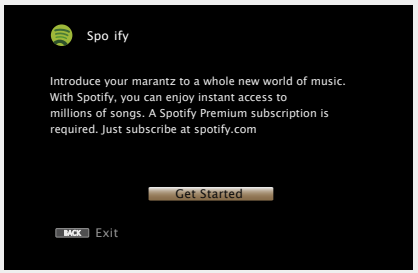
1 Prepare for playback.

① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
② If settings are required, make the "Settings" (☞page 132).
③ Complete step 5 and obtain a Spotify account.
- If you already have a Spotify account, you do not need to obtain a new account. Use your existing Spotify account.

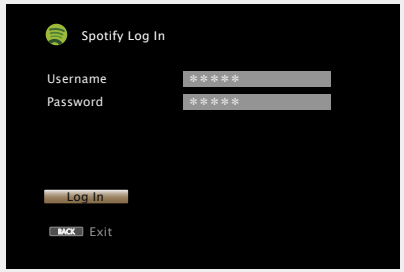
2 Press NETWORK.

3 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Spotify", then press ENTER.

4 If you have a Spotify account, then press ENTER.



5 Use △▽ ▷ to enter your username and password.



- The password should be no longer than 99 characters.
  For character input, see page 107.
- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

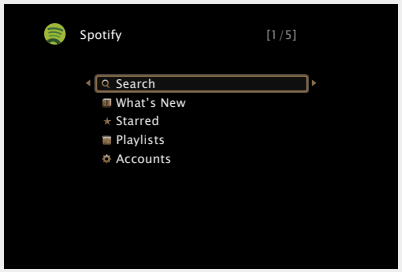
【Upper case characters/Numbers/Symbols】
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ÄÀÁÂÃÅÆÇÐÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÑÖÒÓÔÕØÜÙÚÝÞ
0123456789
! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , ; < = >
【Lower case characters/Numbers/Symbols】
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
äàáâãåæçðèéêëìíîïñöòóôõøüùúûýþÿß
0123456789
. @ - _ / : ~ ? [\ ] ^ ' { | }

- When you use △▽ while you type in, you can change uppercase characters to lowercase and vice versa.
- Press **BACK** to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

6 After inputting the username and password, select "Log In", then press ENTER.

If the username and password match, the top menu for Spotify is displayed.

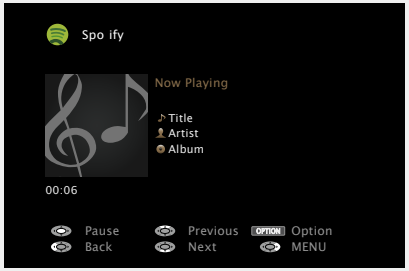
7 Use △▽ to select menu and then press ENTER.



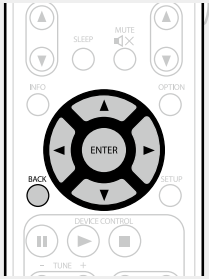
Search	Searches for tracks, artists or albums by entering keywords.
What's New	Displays the list of the latest albums.
Starred	Displays the list of the starred tracks.
Playlists	Displays the playlists for Spotify.
Accounts	Manages accounts (Log out, Add new user, Switch to user).

8 Use △▽ to select a station, and press ENTER or ► to start playback.

Playback starts and the following screen appears.



9 Menu items on playback screen.



Star this track	Adds a star to the selected track.
Browse albums by "Artist name"	Displays the list of albums by the artist of the track that is being played back.
Browse tracks on "Album name"	Displays the list of tracks on the album that is being played back.

❑ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (☞page 111) in the menu.
You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

❑ Switching the screen display

Press **STATUS** on the main unit.
The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the button is pressed.

❑ Going back to the previous screen

Press ◁ or **BACK**.

❑ Changing the screen display duration

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (☞page 120) in the menu.
The default setting is "30s".
Press △▽◁ ▷ while the display is off to return to the original screen.

Operations available through the OPTION button

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

❑ **Performing repeat playback (Repeat)**
(☞page 72)

❑ **Performing random playback (Random)**
(☞page 72)

❑ Spotify operation buttons

Operation buttons	Function
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Page search
INFO	Display of information such as the source name, volume, and sound mode name
OPTION	Repeat playback / Random playback
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽)
ENTER (Press and release)	Enter
ENTER (Press and hold)	Stop
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup menu
II	Pause
►	Playback / Pause
■	Stop
I◄◄ ►►I	Auto search (cue)

Convenient functions

Here, we explain how to use convenient functions for NETWORK sources and USB sources. The source names under the titles of each function's description are sources that allow use of these functions.

❑ **Searching content with keywords (Text Search)** (☞page 71)

❑ **Performing repeat playback (Repeat)** (☞page 72)

❑ **Performing random playback (Random)** (☞page 72)

❑ **Favorites function** (☞page 73)

❑ **Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)** (☞page 74)

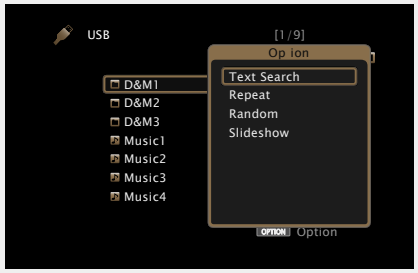
❑ **Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow)** (☞page 74)

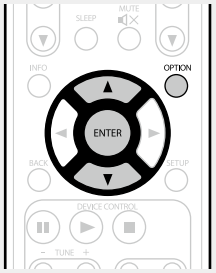
Searching content with keywords (Text Search)

USB | Internet Radio | Media Server

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select "Text Search", then press ENTER.**
The keyboard input screen is displayed.





3 **Enter the first character of the Internet radio station or file you want to search for, and then press OK.**

• For character input, see page 107.

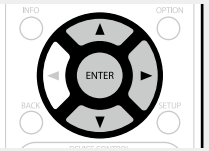
"Text Search" searches for Internet radio stations or files that start with the entered first character from the displayed list.

NOTE

"Text Search" may not work for some lists.

❑ Playing back a search result content

Use △▽ to select the content you want to play, and then press ENTER or ▷.
Playback starts.

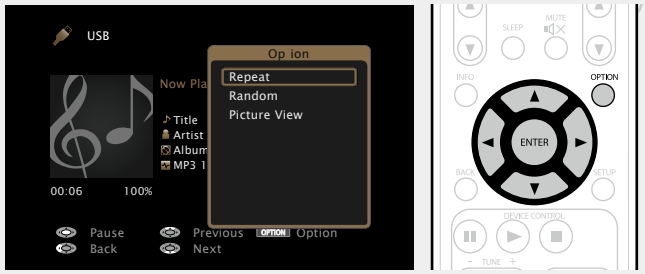


Performing repeat playback (Repeat)

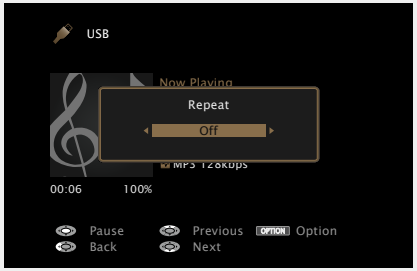
USB | Media Server | Spotify

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.**



3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select repeat playback mode.**



• Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off ⟷ One ⟷ All

Off	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
One	A file being played is played repeatedly.
All	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

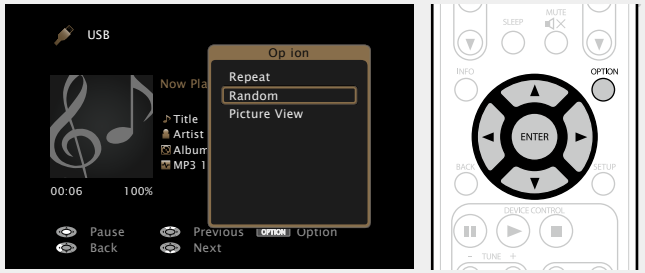
4 **Press ENTER.**
The display returns to the playback screen.

Performing random playback (Random)

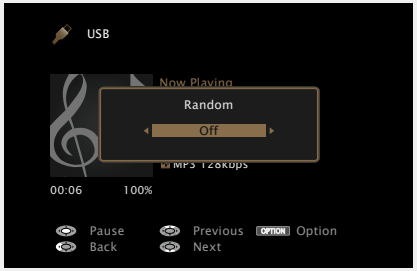
USB | Media Server | Spotify

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Random”, then press ENTER.**



3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select random playback mode.**



• Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off ⟷ On

Off	Disable random playback.
On	Enable random playback.

4 **Press ENTER.**
The display returns to the playback screen.

The random playback randomly selects a track to play back from all tracks every time a track ends. Therefore, the same track may be played back consecutively.

Favorites function

There are two ways to add content to favorites:
① Add to favorites from the Option menu
② Add to the **FAVORITE STATION** button

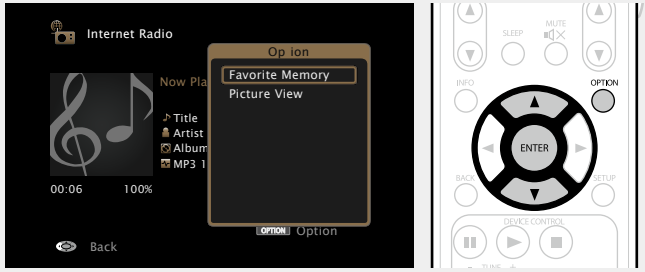
❑ Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory)

Internet Radio **Media Server**

You can add up to 100 items as favorites for all sources (Internet Radio and Media Server).

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select "Favorite Memory", then press ENTER.**
"Favorite added" is displayed, and the current content is added to favorites.



- The display returns to the playback screen when the procedure is completed.

Playing back content added in "Favorite Memory"

1 **Press NETWORK.**

2 **Use △▽◁▷ to select "Favorites", then press ENTER.**

3 **Use △▽ to select the content you want to play, and then press ENTER or ▷.**
Playback starts.

❑ Adding to the FAVORITE STATION button

You can add up to four types of content.

NOTE

- Please note that if you add new content to a number that already contains content, the older content is deleted.
- The following operations update the database on the media server, which may make the added music files unplayable.
  - When you quit the media server and then restart it.
  - When music files are deleted or added on the media server.
- When using an ESCIENT server, place "ESCIENT" before the server name.

While content is playing, press and hold one of the FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 buttons for more than 3 seconds.
The content is added to the button you pressed.

Contents that can be added to the **FAVORITE STATION** button differ depending on the input source.

Input source	Contents that can be added
HD Radio	Input source / Radio station
Internet Radio	Input source / Internet Radio station
Media Server	Input source / Track
Flickr	Input source
Pandora	Input source
SiriusXM	Input source
Spotify	Input source
Favorites	Input source

Playing back content added to the FAVORITE STATION button

You can easily call up content by pressing the **FAVORITE STATION** button.

Press one of the FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4 buttons that you added content to.
Playback starts.

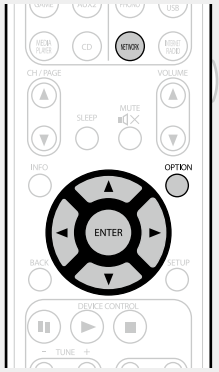
When the **FAVORITE STATION 1 – 4** buttons is pressed, the AVR-operation mode starts automatically.

See overleaf

❑ Deleting content added to favorites (Remove Favorites)

1 Press **NETWORK**.

2 Use △▽◁▷ to select "Favorites", then press **ENTER**.



3 Use △▽ to select the content you want to delete from favorites, then press **OPTION**.
The option menu screen is displayed.

4 Use △▽ to select "Remove Favorites", then press **ENTER**.
"Favorite removed" is displayed, and the selected content is deleted from favorites.

- The display returns to the original screen when the procedure is completed.

Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)

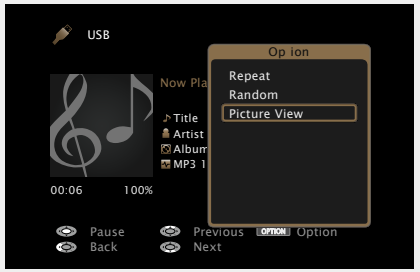
USB | Internet Radio | Media Server

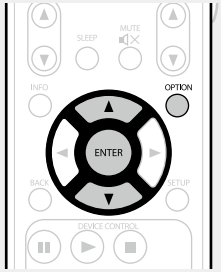
1 Play back a still picture (☞page 62).

2 Play back a music file or Internet radio station (☞page 54, 59).

3 Press **OPTION**.
The option menu screen is displayed.

4 Use △▽ to select "Picture View", then press **ENTER**.
The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.





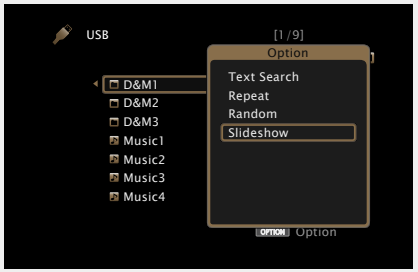
Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow)

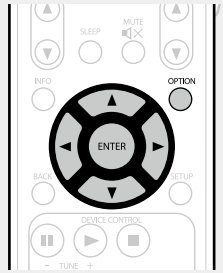
You can play back still image (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device or media server and pictures on Flickr website as a slide show. The display time can also be set.

USB | Media Server | Flickr

1 Play back an image and press **OPTION**.
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 Use △▽ to select "Slideshow", then press **ENTER**.





3 Use ◁ ▷ to set the display time.

- Each time ◁ ▷ is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off ↔ 5s ↔ 10s ↔ 15s
60s ↔ 30s ↔ 20s

Off	The slide show is not played back.
5s – 60s	Set the time for displaying a single image when playing back images in the slide show.

4 Press **ENTER**.
The slide show is displayed on the screen.

This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

AirPlay function

Enjoy music from your iTunes library with high quality sound anywhere in your home.
Use the Apple Remote app* for iPhone, iPod touch and iPad to control iTunes from any room in your home.

* Available as a free download from the App Store.

❑ Streaming music stored in iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad directly to the unit

If you update your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" directly to this unit.

1 Make the Wi-Fi settings for iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad.

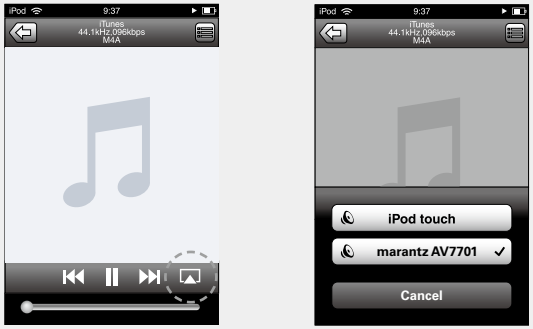
• For details, see your device's manual.

2 Startup iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad music or iPod app.

is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

3 Tap the AirPlay icon .

4 Select the speaker you want to use.



NOTE

In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level.
You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

❑ Playing iTunes music with this unit

1 Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

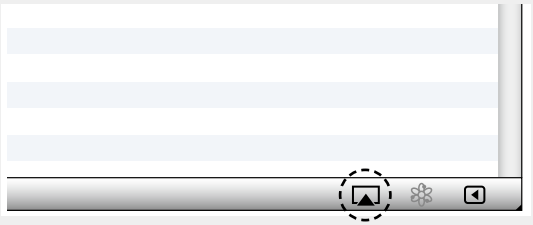
2 Turn this unit ON.

Set "IP Control" (☞page 131) to "Always On" for this unit.

NOTE

When "IP Control" is set to "Always On", the unit consumes more standby power.

3 Launch iTunes and click the AirPlay icon displayed in the lower right of the window and select this unit from the list.



4 Choose a song and click play in iTunes.

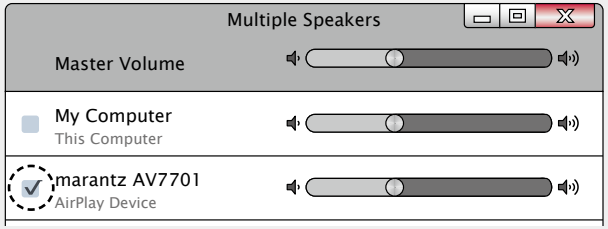
The music will stream to this unit.

Selecting multiple speakers (devices)

It is possible to play iTunes songs on your home's AirPlay compatible speakers (devices) other than those of this unit.

1 Click the AirPlay icon and select "Multiple Speakers" from the list.

2 Check the speakers you want to use.



☞ See overleaf

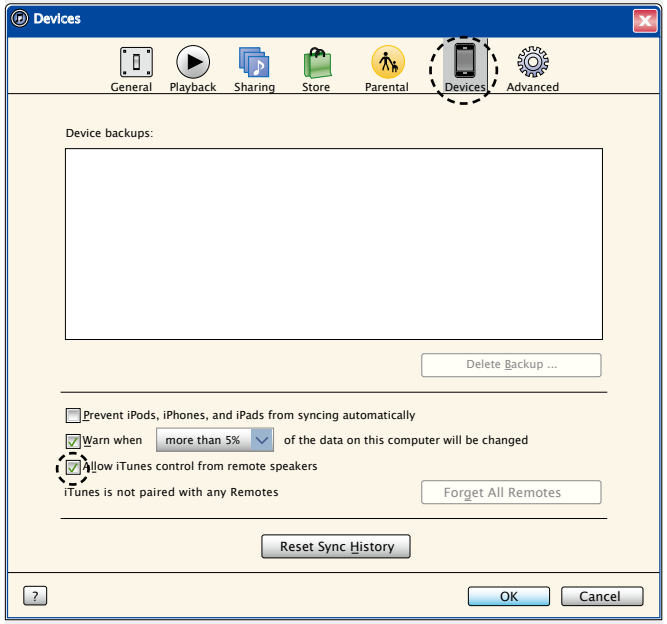
❑ Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit's remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

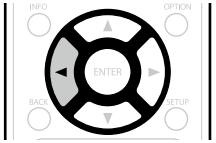
1 **Select "Edit" – "Preferences..." on the menu.**

2 **Select "Devices" in the iTunes setting window.**

3 **Check "Allow iTunes control from remote speakers", and then click "OK".**



- is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to "NETWORK" when AirPlay playback is started.



- You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing the ◁ or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press **STATUS** on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.

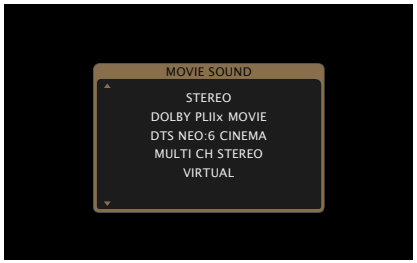
Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode)

This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playbacks.

Multi-channel audio formats are adopted by many of the contents including Blu-ray disc and DVD as well as digital broadcasting and Internet-delivered movies and music.
This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.

This unit automatically generates a list of all the playable sound modes based on the input audio format and the current speaker setup configuration and displays the list on the screen. Therefore, you can select a correct surround playback mode even if you are not familiar with sound mode selection. Try out various surround playback modes and enjoy surround playback in your favorite mode.

【Example】 When **MOVIE** is pressed and held



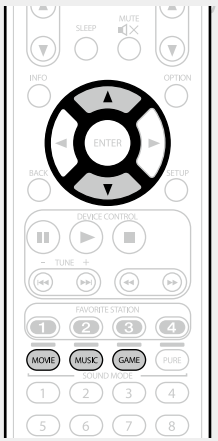
The displayed sound modes include the 2-channel stereo playback mode.

For audio formats recorded in a disc, see the disc jacket.

Selecting a listening mode

1 **Play the selected device (☞page 37 – 69).**

2 **Press and hold MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a listening mode.**
This unit automatically generates and displays a list of selectable sound modes.



- Each time **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME** is pressed, the listening mode is switched.

MOVIE Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.

MUSIC Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying music.

GAME Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying games.

- Pressing **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME** displays a list of the listening modes that can be selected. Each time you press **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME**, the listening mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use △▽ to select a listening mode.

- The **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, or **GAME** button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, or **GAME** recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most standard sound mode for the content is automatically selected.
- This can also be set by pressing **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, or **GAME** on the main unit.

Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

1 **Play the selected device (☞page 37 – 69).**

2 **Press PURE to select "DIRECT".**
Direct playback begins.

Pure direct playback

This mode is for playback in higher sound quality than in "DIRECT" mode. Turn the display of the amplifier off to stop the analogue video circuit. This suppresses the source of noise that affects sound quality.

1 **Play the selected device (☞page 37 – 69).**

2 **Press PURE to select "PURE DIRECT On".**
PURE DIRECT indicator on the main unit lights.
The display goes dark, and pure direct playback begins.

- In DIRECT and PURE DIRECT listening mode, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Tone (☞page 110)
  - MultEQ® XT (☞page 112)
  - Dynamic EQ (☞page 113)
  - Dynamic Volume (☞page 113)
  - M-DAX (☞page 111)
- This can also be set by pressing **PURE DIRECT** on the main unit.

NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the PURE DIRECT mode.
- When in the PURE DIRECT mode, the menu screen is not displayed.
- When in the PURE DIRECT mode, the display turns off and appears as if there is no electricity.

Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.

1 **Play the selected device (☞page 37 – 69).**

2 **Press PURE to select "AUTO".**
Auto surround playback begins.

This can also be set by pressing **PURE DIRECT** on the main unit.

❑ Listening mode

- The following listening modes can be selected using the **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, **GAME**, and **PURE** buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu "Surround Parameter" (☞page 109) to enjoy your favorite sound mode.

Operation button	Input signal		Listening mode
MOVIE	2-channel *1		STEREO
			AUTO *2
			DOLBY PLIIx Movie *3
			DOLBY PLII Movie *3 / DOLBY PLII Movie A-DSX *5
			DOLBY Pro Logic *3 / DOLBY Pro Logic A-DSX *5
			DTS NEO:6 Cinema *3 / DTS NEO:6 Cinema A-DSX *5
			DOLBY PLIIz Height *3
			MULTI CH STEREO
			VIRTUAL
	Multi-channel *4		STEREO
			AUTO *2
		Dolby Digital	DOLBY DIGITAL / DOLBY DIGITAL A-DSX *5
			DOLBY DIGITAL EX
			DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Movie
			DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz
		Dolby TrueHD	DOLBY TrueHD / DOLBY TrueHD A-DSX *5
			DOLBY TrueHD + EX
			DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIx Movie
			DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz
		Dolby Digital Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus / DOLBY DIGITAL Plus A-DSX *5
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIx Movie
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz
		DTS	DTS SURROUND / DTS SURROUND A-DSX *5
			DTS ES DSCRT 6.1
			DTS ES MTRX 6.1
			DTS 96/24
			DTS + NEO:6
			DTS + PLIIx Movie
			DTS + PLIIz

Operation button	Input signal		Listening mode
MOVIE	DTS-HD / DTS Express		DTS-HD HI RES / DTS-HD HI RES A-DSX *5
			DTS-HD MSTR / DTS-HD MSTR A-DSX *5
			DTS Express / DTS Express A-DSX *5
			DTS-HD + NEO:6
			DTS-HD + PLIIx Movie
			DTS-HD + PLIIz
	PCM/DSD multi-channel		MULTI CH IN / MULTI CH IN A-DSX *5
			MULTI CH IN 7.1
			MULTI IN + Dolby EX
			MULTI IN + PLIIx Movie
			MULTI IN + PLIIz
	Multi-channel *4		MULTI CH STEREO
			VIRTUAL

*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

*2 When AUTO mode is selected, the sound mode that is compatible with the input signal is used for playback.

*3 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

*4 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞page 161).

*5 These modes add a new channel to the 5.1 channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing (☞page 113).
When "On-Height-" is selected in Audyssey DSX® (☞page 113), a front height channel is added in playback. When "On-Wide-" is selected, a front wide channel is added in playback.

☞ See overleaf

Operation button	Input signal		Listening mode
MUSIC	2-channel *1		STEREO
			AUTO *2
			DOLBY PLIIx Music *3
			DOLBY PLII Music *3 / DOLBY PLII Music A-DSX *5
			DTS NEO:6 Music *3 / DTS NEO:6 Music A-DSX *5
			DOLBY PLIIz Height *3
			MULTI CH STEREO
			VIRTUAL
	Multi-channel *4		STEREO
			AUTO *2
		Dolby Digital	DOLBY DIGITAL / DOLBY DIGITAL A-DSX *5
			DOLBY DIGITAL EX
			DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Music
			DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz
		Dolby TrueHD	DOLBY TrueHD / DOLBY TrueHD A-DSX *5
			DOLBY TrueHD + EX
			DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIx Music
			DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz
		Dolby Digital Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus / DOLBY DIGITAL Plus A-DSX *5
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIx Music
			DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz
		DTS	DTS SURROUND / DTS SURROUND A-DSX *5
			DTS ES DSCRT 6.1
			DTS ES MTRX 6.1
			DTS 96/24
			DTS + NEO:6
			DTS + PLIIx Music
			DTS + PLIIz

Operation button	Input signal		Listening mode
MUSIC	DTS-HD / DTS Express		DTS-HD HI RES / DTS-HD HI RES A-DSX *5
			DTS-HD MSTR / DTS-HD MSTR A-DSX *5
			DTS Express / DTS Express A-DSX *5
			DTS-HD + NEO:6
			DTS-HD + PLIIx Music
			DTS-HD + PLIIz
	PCM/DSD multi-channel		MULTI CH IN / MULTI CH IN A-DSX *5
			MULTI CH IN 7.1
			MULTI IN + Dolby EX
			MULTI IN + PLIIx Music
			MULTI IN + PLIIz
	Multi-channel *4		MULTI CH STEREO
			VIRTUAL

*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

*2 When AUTO mode is selected, the sound mode that is compatible with the input signal is used for playback.

*3 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

*4 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞page 161).

*5 These modes add a new channel to the 5.1 channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing (☞page 113).
When "On-Height-" is selected in Audyssey DSX® (☞page 113), a front height channel is added in playback. When "On-Wide-" is selected, a front wide channel is added in playback.

Operation button	Input signal	Listening mode
GAME	2-channel *1	STEREO
		AUTO *2
		DOLBY PLIIx Game *3
		DOLBY PLII Game *3 / DOLBY PLII Game A-DSX *5
		DOLBY PLIIz Height *3
		MULTI CH STEREO
		VIRTUAL
	Multi-channel *4	STEREO
		AUTO *2
	Dolby Digital	DOLBY DIGITAL / DOLBY DIGITAL A-DSX *5
		DOLBY DIGITAL EX
		DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz
	Dolby TrueHD	DOLBY TrueHD / DOLBY TrueHD A-DSX *5
		DOLBY TrueHD + EX
		DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz
	Dolby Digital Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus / DOLBY DIGITAL Plus A-DSX *5
		DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX
		DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz
	DTS	DTS SURROUND / DTS SURROUND A-DSX *5
		DTS ES DSCRT 6.1
		DTS ES MTRX 6.1
		DTS 96/24
		DTS + NEO:6
		DTS + PLIIz
	DTS-HD / DTS Express	DTS-HD HI RES / DTS-HD HI RES A-DSX *5
		DTS-HD MSTR / DTS-HD MSTR A-DSX *5
		DTS Express / DTS Express A-DSX *5
		DTS-HD + NEO:6
		DTS-HD + PLIIz
	PCM/DSD multi-channel	MULTI CH IN / MULTI CH IN A-DSX *5
		MULTI CH IN 7.1
		MULTI IN + Dolby EX
		MULTI IN + PLIIz
		MULTI CH STEREO
		VIRTUAL

Operation button	Input signal	Listening mode
PURE	All	DIRECT
		PURE DIRECT
		AUTO *2

*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

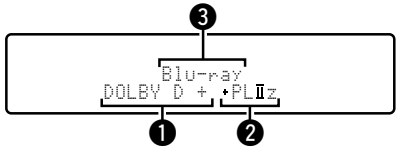
*2 When AUTO mode is selected, the sound mode that is compatible with the input signal is used for playback.

*3 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

*4 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞page 161).

*5 These modes add a new channel to the 5.1 channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing (☞page 113).
When "On-Height-" is selected in Audyssey DSX® (☞page 113), a front height channel is added in playback. When "On-Wide-" is selected, a front wide channel is added in playback.

Views on the TV screen or display



❶ Shows a decoder to be used.
- A DOLBY DIGITAL Plus decoder is displayed as "□□+".

❷ Shows a decoder that creates sound output from the surround back speakers.
- "+ PLIIz" indicates the front height sound from front height speakers.

❸ Shows the name of the input source being played back.

☞See overleaf

❑ Description of listening mode types

Dolby listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
DOLBY PLIIx*1	This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the surround back channel. By adding the surround back channel, a stronger surround feeling is obtained compared to Dolby Pro Logic II. There are three playback modes: "Movie" mode that is optimized for movie playback, "Music" mode that is optimized for music playback, and "Game" mode that is optimized for game play.
DOLBY PLII	This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic II decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 5.1-channel surround sound with a natural, realistic feel.
DOLBY Pro Logic	This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic decoder is used to play 2-channel source in 4.1-channel surround sound (Left/Center/Right/Surround Mono).
DOLBY PLIIz*2	This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIz decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 7.1-channel surround sound with added front height channel. By adding a front height channel, the vertical expression is emphasized, improving the three-dimensionality of the sound.
DOLBY DIGITAL	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital.
DOLBY DIGITAL EX*1	Using a Dolby Digital EX decoder, this mode plays Dolby Digital source in 6.1/7.1 channel surround sound with added surround back channel. By adding a surround back channel, spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DOLBY TrueHD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD.
DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital Plus.

*1 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" is not set to "None".
*2 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" is not set to "None".

DTS listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
DTS NEO:6	This mode can be selected when a DTS NEO:6 decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the surround back channel. There is a "Cinema" mode optimized for movie playback, and a "Music" mode optimized for music playback.
DTS SURROUND	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES DSCRT6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES MTRX6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.

* This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" is not set to "None".

PCM multi-channel listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
MULTI CH IN	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM sources .

See overleaf

Audyssey DSX listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
Audyssey DSX (A-DSX)*	This mode creates playback for the new channels (front wide or front height) in 5.1-channel systems. By adding front wide or front high channels, the surround sound effects sound more three dimensional and realistic.

* This can be selected when a setting other than "None" is selected for "Front Height" or "Front Wide", and a setting other than "None" is selected for "Center" in "Speaker Config." (☞page 127).

Original listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
MULTI CH STEREO	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers. The same sound as that from the front speakers (L/R) is played back at the same level from the surround speakers (L/R) and surround back speakers (L/R).
VIRTUAL	This mode is for enjoying surround effects using only the front speakers or headphones.

AUTO listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
AUTO	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, DTS-HD, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used.

STEREO listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
STEREO	This is the mode for playing in stereo. The tone can be adjusted. • Sound is output from the front left and right speakers and subwoofer. • If multichannel signals are input, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played.

Direct listening mode

Listening mode type	Description
DIRECT	Sound recorded in source is played as is.
PURE DIRECT	This mode is for playback in higher sound quality than in DIRECT mode. Turn the display of the amplifier off to stop the analogue video circuit. This suppresses the source of noise that affects sound quality.

Advanced version

Here, we explain functions and operations that let you make better use of this unit.

- Installation/connection/setup of speakers (Advanced) ☞page 84
- Connections (Advanced connection) ☞page 90
- Playback (Advanced operation) ☞page 92
- Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room) ☞page 100
- How to make detailed settings ☞page 103
- Operating external devices with the remote control ☞page 140

Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection)

Procedure for speaker settings

Install

↓

Connect (☞page 86)

↓

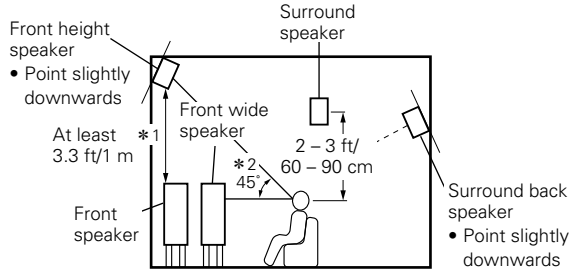
Set up speakers (☞page 88)

Install

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room. Here, we explain how to install the speakers using a typical example.

This unit is compatible with Audyssey DSX® (☞page 166) and Dolby Pro Logic IIz (☞page 166), which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
When using Audyssey DSX™, install front wide speakers or front height speakers.
When using Dolby Pro Logic IIz, install front height speakers.

Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.



【Viewed from the side】

*1 Recommended for Dolby Pro Logic IIz
*2 Recommended for Audussey DSX®

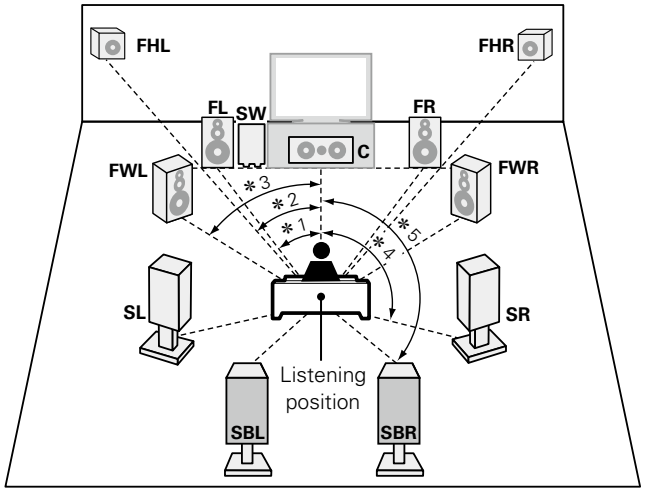
NOTE

You cannot have audio output from the surround back speakers, front height speakers and front wide speakers simultaneously.

☞ See overleaf

When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back, front height, and front wide speakers

When using Audyssey DSX®, install front wide speakers or front height speakers.
When using Dolby Pro Logic IIz, install front height speakers.

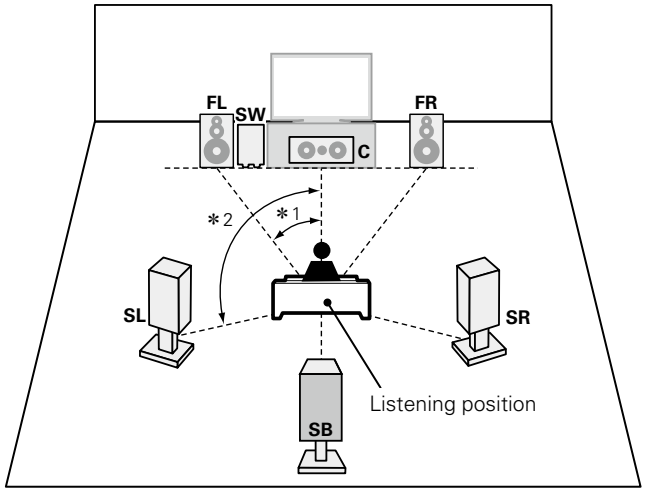


*1 22˚ – 30˚ *2 22˚ – 45˚ *3 55˚ – 60˚
*4 90˚ – 110˚ *5 135˚ – 150˚

【Speaker abbreviations】

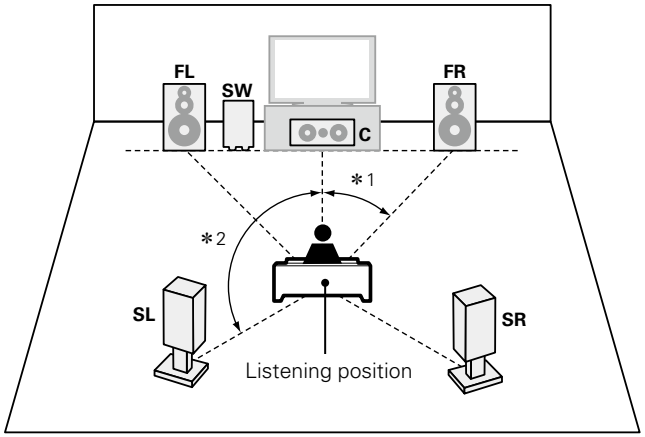
FL	Front speaker (L)	**SBL**	Surround back speaker (L)
FR	Front speaker (R)	**SBR**	Surround back speaker (R)
C	Center speaker	**FHL**	Front height speaker (L)
SW	Subwoofer	**FHR**	Front height speaker (R)
SL	Surround speaker (L)	**FWL**	Front wide speaker (L)
SR	Surround speaker (R)	**FWR**	Front wide speaker (R)
SB	Surround back speaker		

When 6.1ch speakers are installed



*1 22˚ – 30˚ *2 90˚ – 110˚

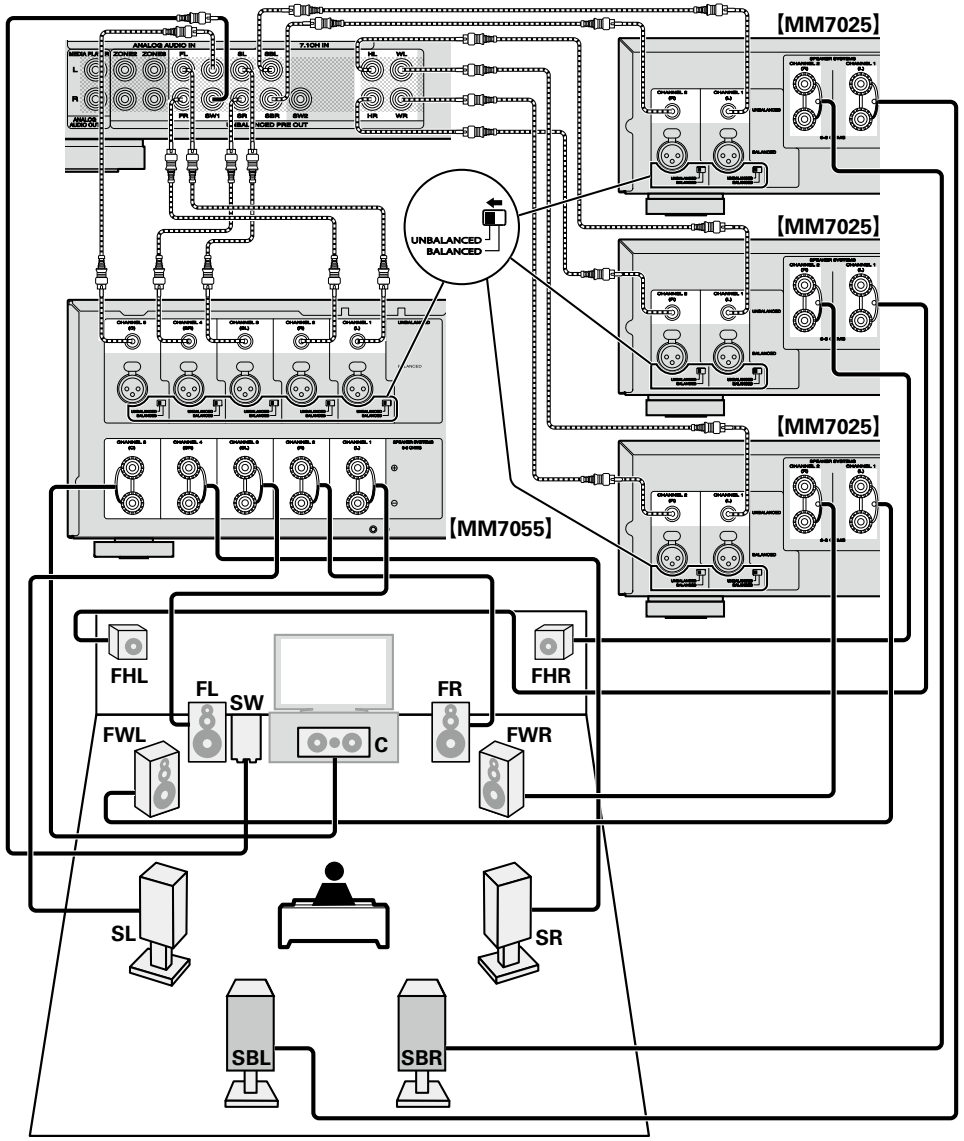
When 5.1ch speakers are installed



*1 22˚ – 30˚ *2 120˚

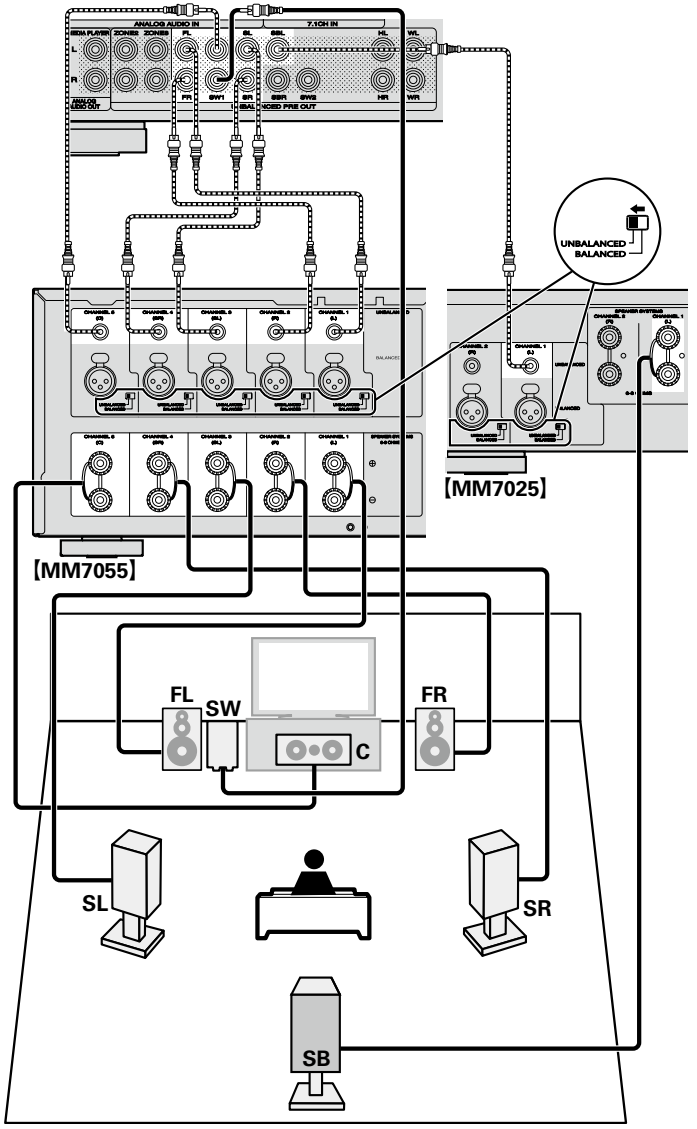
❑ Example of connections to marantz MM7055 and MM7025 power amp

7.1-channel (Surround back / Front height / Front wide speaker) connection

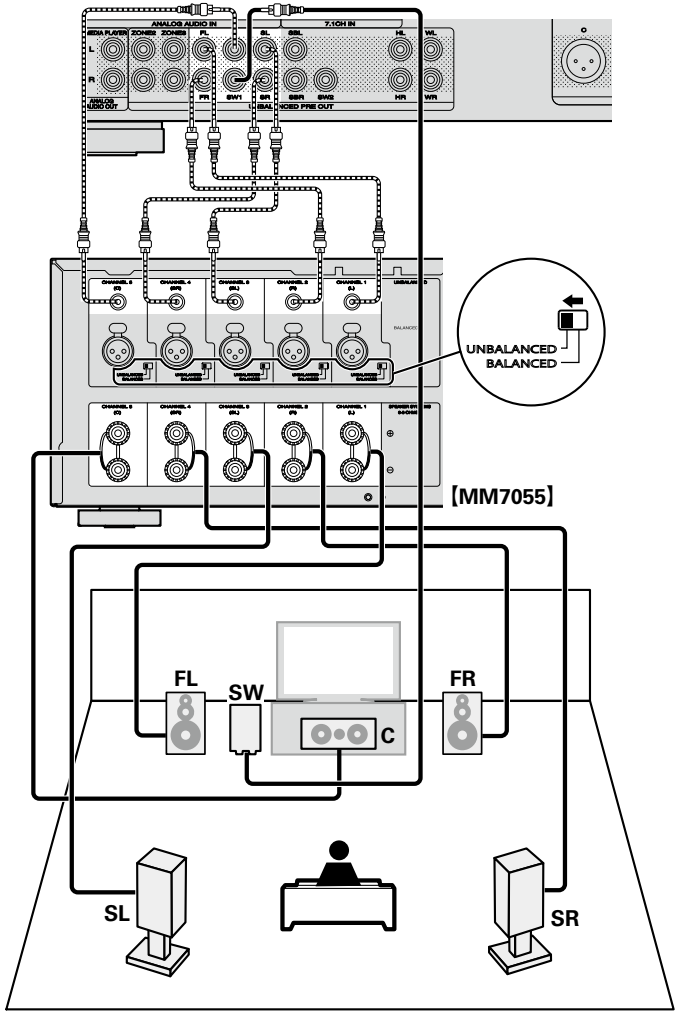


6.1-channel (Surround back speaker) connection

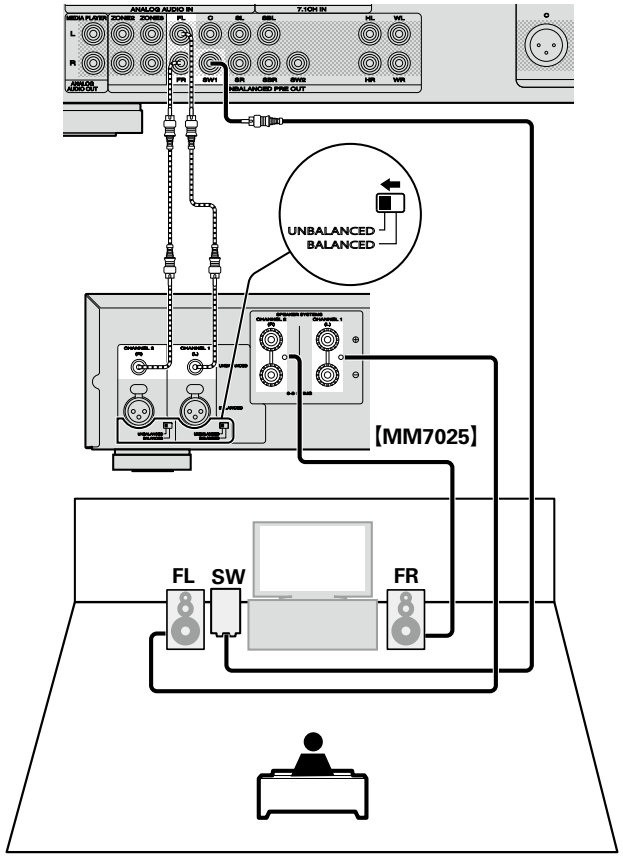
If you are using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the UNBALANCED or BALANCED PRE OUT SBL terminals on the power amp.
For speaker settings in this case, see “When 6.1ch speakers are installed” (☞page 85).



5.1-channel connection

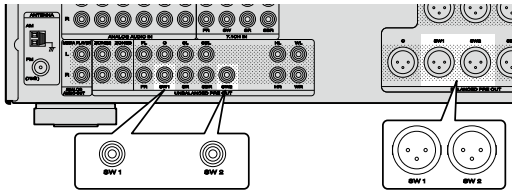


2.1-channel connection



❑ For connecting four subwoofers

Four subwoofers can be connected to this unit.
The same signal is output from each subwoofer terminal.



Set up speakers

This section describes detailed settings for Audyssey® Setup.

Connecting the Pre Tuner, Power Amplifier and your TV.

Before Audyssey® Setup measurement, the settings shown below can be made.

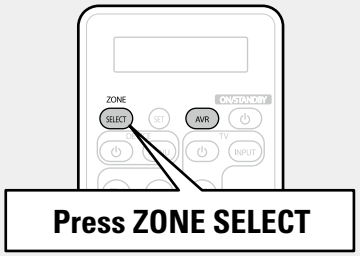
- Setting the channels to be used (Channel Select)
  If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers (☞page 88 "Set up "Channel Select"").

❑ Audio output from each PRE OUT terminal

	PRE OUT Channel						
UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal	FL/FR	C	SW1/SW2	SL/SR	SBL/SBR	HL/HR	WL/WR
BALANCED PRE OUT terminal	FL/FR	C	SW1/SW2	SL/SR	SBL/SBR	---	---
Audio Output	Front	Center	Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2	Surround	Surround Back	Front Height	Front Wide

1 Set up the remote control unit

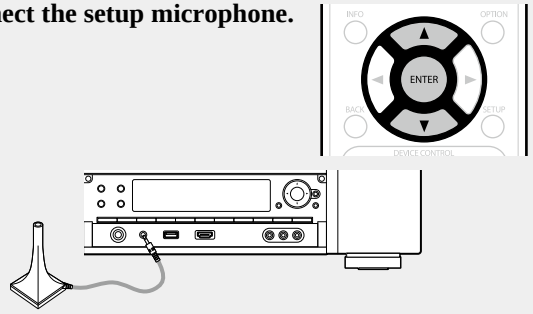
❑ **Set up the zone mode**
Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".



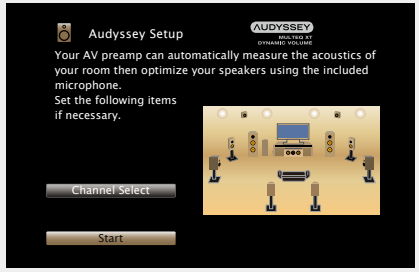
NOTE

When using a remote control with preset codes registered (☞page 143), press **AVR** to set the remote control to the AVR-operation mode before operation.

2 Connect the setup microphone.

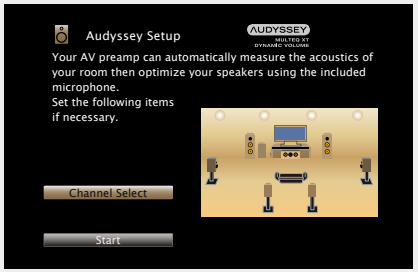


When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



3 Set up "Channel Select"

Use △▽ to select "Channel Select", and then press ENTER.



☞ See overleaf

4 Use △▽ to select a channel, and then press ENTER.

Subwoofer	Select for no subwoofers to be used. In this case, go to step 5.
Surround Back	Select the number of surround back speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 6.
Front Height	Select for no front height speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 7.
Front Wide	Select for no front wide speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 8.

5 Use ◁ ▷ to set whether or not a subwoofer channel is measured, and then press ENTER.

Measure	Set for measuring a subwoofer.
Skip	Set for no measuring of a subwoofer.

6 Use ◁ ▷ to set whether or not a surround back channel is measured, and then press ENTER.

Measure (2 spkrs)	Set for measuring two surround back speakers.
Measure (1 spkr)	Set for measuring a surround back speaker.
Skip	Set for no measuring of a surround back speaker.

7 Use ◁ ▷ to set whether or not a front height channel is measured, and then press ENTER.

Measure	Set to measure the front height speakers.
Skip	Set when you do not want to measure the front height speakers.

8 Use ◁ ▷ to set whether or not a front wide channel is measured, and then press ENTER.

Measure	Set to measure the front wide speakers.
Skip	Set when you do not want to measure the front wide speakers.

9 Press ◁ or BACK.

Proceed to page 31 Preparation step 5.

NOTE

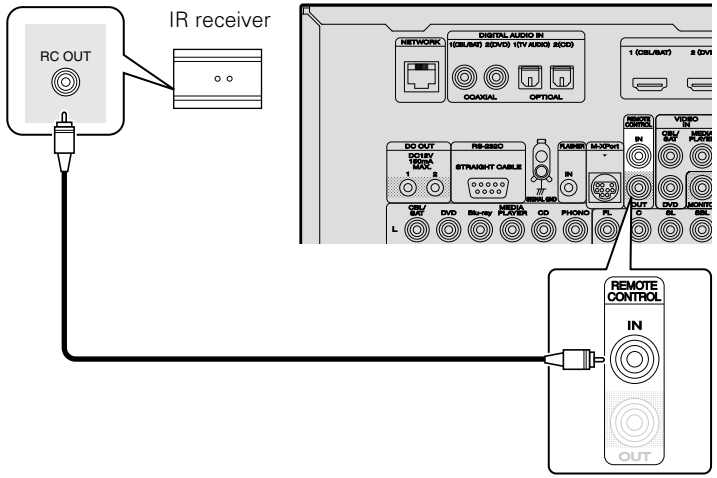
After performing Audyssey® Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey® Setup again.

Connections (Advanced connection)

Connecting the REMOTE CONTROL connectors

Performing operations on this unit and external devices

- You can connect an IR receiver to this unit to perform operations on this unit and external devices with the supplied remote control unit.
- To do this, disable the remote control signal receiving function (☞page 98 "Remote lock function").

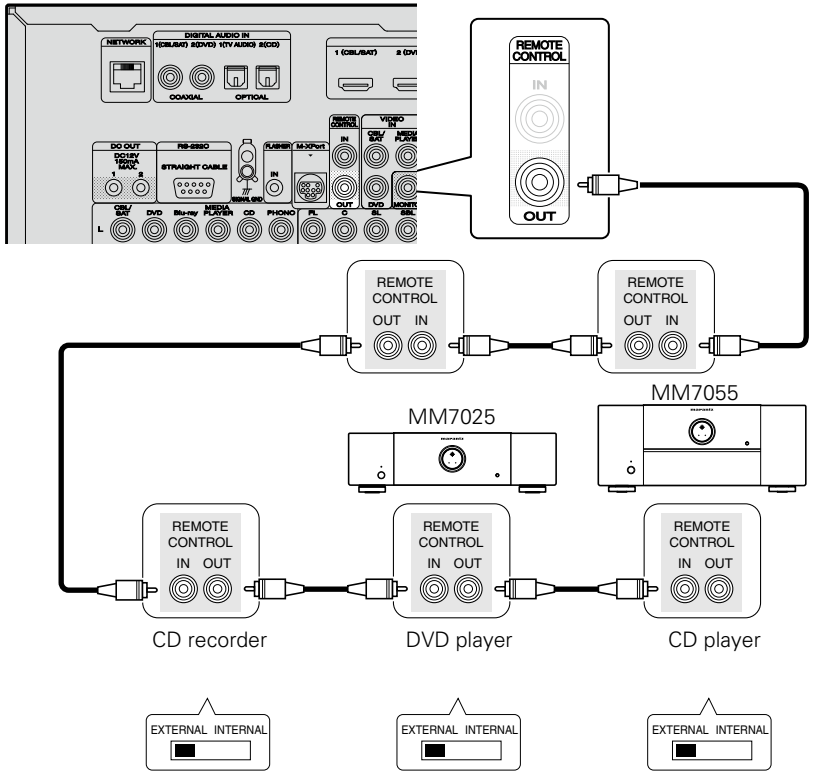


NOTE

When not connecting an IR receiver, make sure to enable the remote control signal receiving function. When the function is disabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

Remotely connecting marantz devices

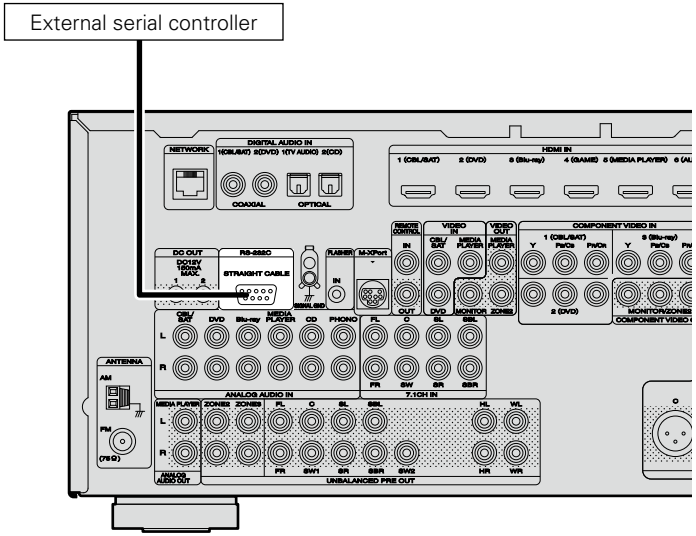
- When you are using a marantz device other than this unit that supports remote connection, an IR receiver is not necessary.
- You can transmit remote control signals just by connecting the device to the REMOTE CONTROL IN/OUT connector with a monaural cable.
- Set the remote control switch located on the rear panel of the connected audio component to "EXTERNAL" or "EXT." to use this feature.
- If a marantz power amplifier (excluding certain models is connected to any of these connectors, the power of the power amplifier switches to on/standby in conjunction with the ⏻ **ON/STANDBY** button of the this unit.



Connecting an external control device

RS-232C connector

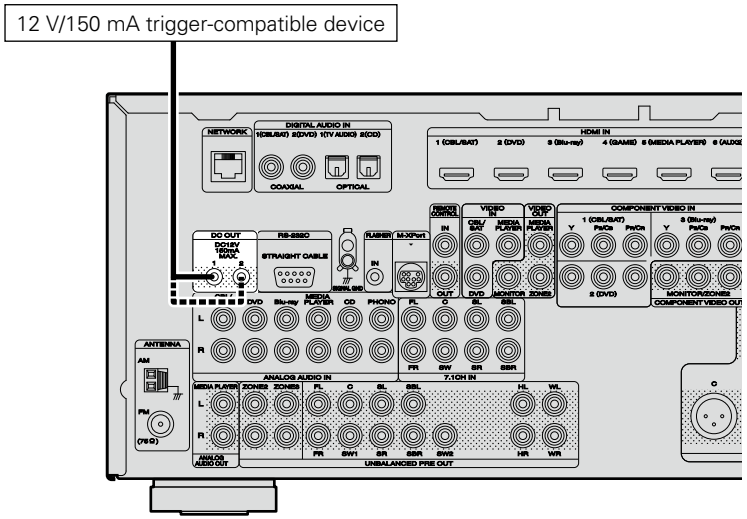
When you connect an external control device, you can control this unit with the external control device (such as power supply operation, volume adjustment, and input source switching).



Perform the operation below beforehand.
① Turn on the power of this unit.
② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

DC OUT jacks

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit.
The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V/150 mA electrical signal.



NOTE

- Use the monaural mini-plug cable for connecting DC OUT jacks. Do not use the stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

Setup (☞page 29)

Playback (Basic operation) (☞page 36)

Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (☞page 77)

Connections (Advanced connection) (☞page 90)

❑ **HDMI control function** (☞page 92)
❑ **Sleep timer function** (☞page 94)
❑ **Web control function** (☞page 95)
❑ **Dual backup memory function** (☞page 97)
❑ **Panel lock function** (☞page 97)
❑ **Remote lock function** (☞page 98)
❑ **Switches light illumination on/off** (☞page 99)
❑ **Various memory functions** (☞page 99)

HDMI control function

If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

❑ Operations possible by HDMI control

- **This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.**
- **You can switch audio output devices with a TV operation.**
  When you set "Output audio from amp" in the TV audio output setup operation, you can switch the amp power on.
- **You can adjust this unit volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.**
- **You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.**
- **When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.**
- **If you switch the input source of the unit to "TV AUDIO", you can play TV audio with this unit (☞page 9 "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function").**
- **When "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) in the menu is set to "On", signals input to the HDMI input connector are output to the television or other device connected to the HDMI output connector, even if the power of this unit is in standby (pass-through function).**

- To use this unit to play the audio of a TV that does not support the ARC function, connect the TV with an optical-digital or analog connection (☞page 9).
- To use the pass-through function, connect an HDMI connection device that is compatible with HDMI control.

❑ Setting procedure

1 **Set the HDMI output connector corresponding with the HDMI control function.**
Set "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) to "On".

2 **Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.**

3 **Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.**
- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

4 **Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.**

5 **Switch this unit input to the HDMI input source and check if the picture from the player is ok.**

6 **When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.**

☞ See overleaf

If the HDMI control function does not operate properly, check the following points.

- Is the TV or player compatible with the HDMI control function?
- Is "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) set to "On"?
- Is "Power Off Control" (☞page 117) set to "All" or "Video"?
- Is "Control Monitor" (☞page 117) set for the monitor output connected to television?
- Is "Control Monitor" (☞page 117) set to the TV that uses the HDMI control function when this unit is connected to two TVs that support HDMI connectors?
- Are the HDMI control function settings of all devices correct?

NOTE

- **When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power.**
- The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.
- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.
- When "Power Off Control" on the menu is set to "Off" (☞page 117), this unit is not set to standby even if the connected device is in the standby mode.
- When connection changes are implemented, such as adding connections to HDMI devices, linked operations may be initialized. In this case, you will need to reconfigure the settings.
- When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it is not possible to assign an HDMI connector to "TV AUDIO" at "Input Assign" (☞page 122).
- Should any of the operations below be performed, the interlocking function may be reset, in which case, repeat steps 2 and 3.
  - "Input Assign" – "HDMI" (☞page 122) setting has changed.
  - "Video Output" (☞page 117) setting is changed.
  - There is a change to the connection between the devices and the HDMI, or an increase in devices.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with "HDMI Control" in the menu set to "On", the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.
- If "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On" and the power of ZONE2 is on, this units may behave as follows. It is recommended to disable the HDMI control function on your TV and player when using the HDMI ZONE2 function. (Some example behaviors are listed below.)
  - When the power of the TV used for MAIN ZONE is off and the player selected for ZONE2 starts playback, the TV used for MAIN ZONE is turned on. In this case, the input source selected for MAIN ZONE changes to the input source selected for ZONE2.
  - When playing back a TV used for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 with an HDMI connection, turning off the TV used for MAIN ZONE also turns off this unit and the player.
  - When a same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, stopping playback of the player on the TV stops the playback on the player and the video being played back in ZONE2 as well.

Sleep timer function

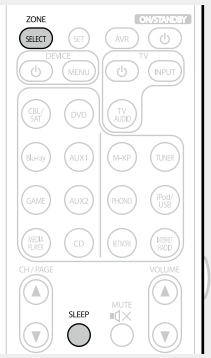
- You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep.
- The sleep timer function can be set for each zone (☞page 102 "Sleep timer function"). (The MAIN ZONE setting method is explained here.)

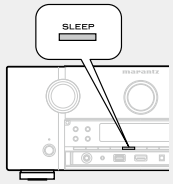
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".**

2 **Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**

The S indicator on the display lights.

- If **SLLEP** on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.





- The time switches as shown below each time **SLEEP** is pressed.

Off → 10 min → 20 → 30 → 40 → 50 → 60 → 70 → 80 → 90 → 100 → 110 → 120 → Off

To confirm the countdown time before putting the unit to sleep

Press **SLEEP**.
"Sleep : ✻min" appears on the display.
✻ Countdown time

To cancel the sleep timer

Press **SLEEP** to set "Off".
The S indicator on the display turns off.

- The sleep timer setting is canceled if this unit's power is set to standby.
- The sleep timer function can be set separately for the different zones (☞page 102 "Sleep timer function").

NOTE

The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

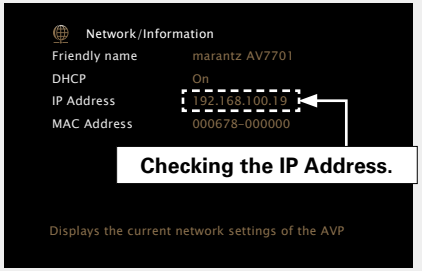
Web control function

You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.

- This unit and the PC need to be connected to the network properly (☞page 27 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)") in order to use the web control function.
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

1 Switch the "IP Control" setting to "Always On" (☞page 131).

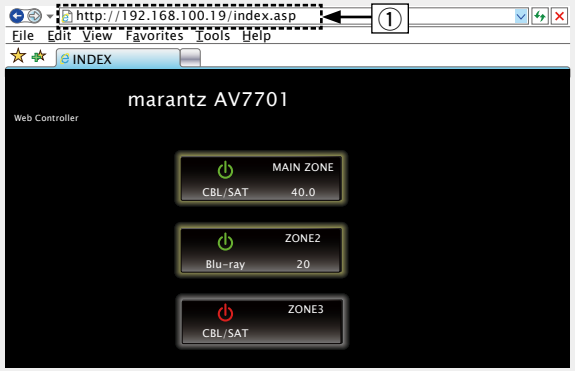
2 Check the IP address of this unit with "Information" (☞page 131).



3 Start up the web browser.

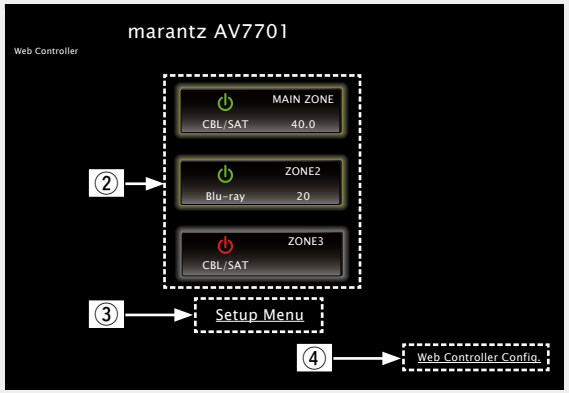
4 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser's address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is "192.168.100.19", enter "http://192.168.100.19/".



① Entering the IP address.
- By adding this unit's IP address to the browser's bookmark, you can display the web control screen using the bookmark function the next time you use the browser. If you are using a DHCP server and "IP Control" (☞page 131) is set to "Off In Standby", turning the power on/off changes the IP address.

5 When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.

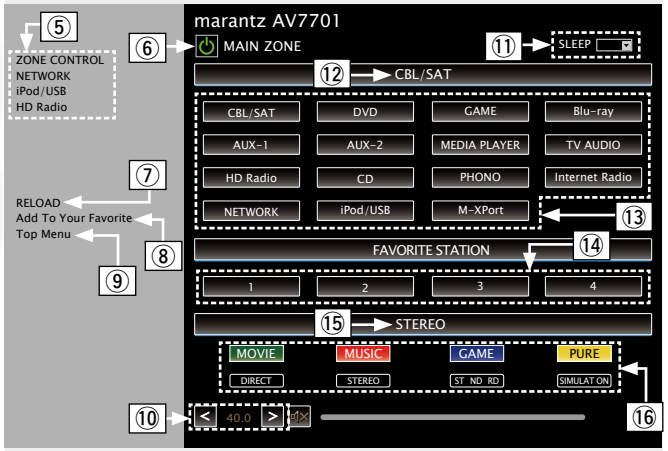


② Click when you select the zone to operate. (☞**[Example 1]**)
③ Click when you operate the setup menu.
④ Click to change the Web control screen setting. (☞**[Example 3]**)

☞ See overleaf

6 Operate.

【Example 1】 MAIN ZONE control screen



⑤ Click the menu item from which you want to make settings.
The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens. (☞**【Example 4】**)

⑥ Click when you perform a power operation of the unit.

⑦ Click when you update to the latest information.
Normally, there is a change to the latest information each time you operate. When operating from the main unit, click this or else the screen will not be updated.

⑧ Click to add a setting to "Favorites" in your browser.
We recommend registering the setting screens for the different zones in the browser's favorites so as not to accidentally perform menu operations for zones you do not intend to operate.

⑨ Click to return to the top menu.
Displayed when setting "Top Menu Link Setup" to "ON" in **【Example 3】**

⑩ To adjust the main volume, click "<", ">", or the volume display.

⑪ Click "v" to set the sleep timer function.

⑫ Displays the name of the selected input source.

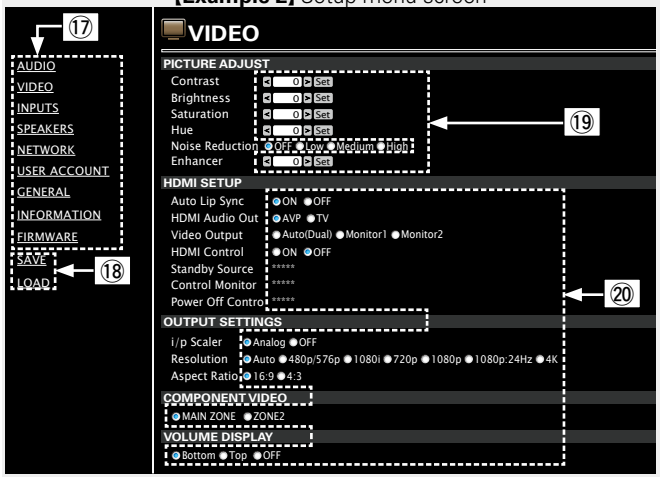
⑬ Click a button to change the input source.

⑭ Register your favorite content.

⑮ Displays the sound mode.

⑯ The sound mode switches each time you click the button.

【Example 2】 Setup menu screen



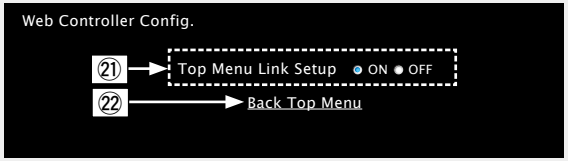
⑰ Click the menu item from which you want to make settings.
The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens.

⑱ Click "SAVE" when you want to save settings, and click "LOAD" when you want to call settings.

⑲ Enter figures or click "<" or ">" to make the setting, and then click "Set".

⑳ Click an item to make a setting.

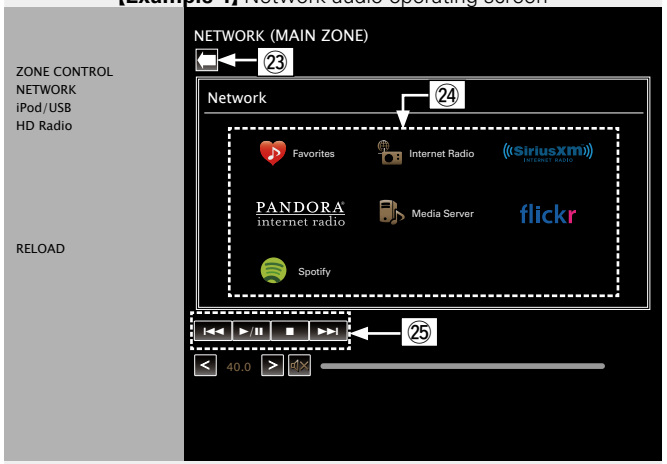
【Example 3】 Web configuration screen



㉑ Click "ON" when performing Top Menu Link Setup.
When set up, return to the top menu from each operation screen.
(Default setting : "OFF")

㉒ Click this item to return to the top menu.

【Example 4】 Network audio operating screen



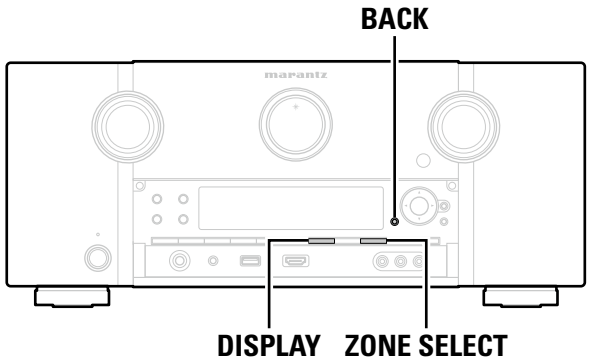
㉓ Click to return to the previous screen.

㉔ Click the content you want to operate.

㉕ Use to operate content.

Dual backup memory function

The unit stores settings information in nonvolatile memory even when the main power supply is turned off. Using the Dual Backup Memory function, you can write settings information to another memory area to back up saved settings for recovery anytime as needed. Remembering set details (Backup).



❑ Remembering set details (Backup)

Set the unit in the state you want remembering, and press and hold DISPLAY and ZONE SELECT for at least 3 seconds.
"MEMORY SAVING" is shown in the display, and the setting details are remembered.

NOTE

- The volume is not remembered.
- If remembered details are overwritten, the previously remembered contents are deleted.

❑ Recalling remembered details (Recovery)

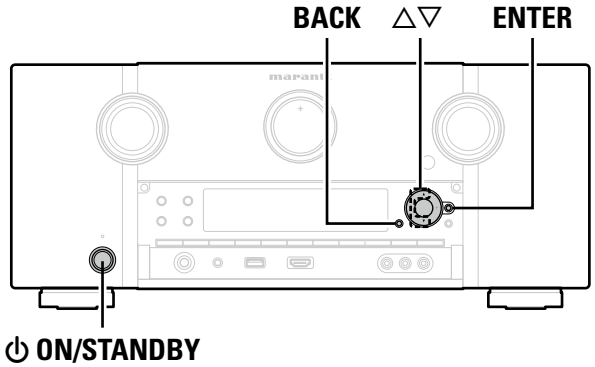
Press and hold BACK and ZONE SELECT together for at least 3 seconds.
"MEMORY LOAD" is shown in the display, and the remembered details are recalled.

NOTE

- If there is no remembered data, "NO BACKUP" is shown in the display, and no remembered details are recalled.
- As the volume cannot be recalled, it returns to the factory setting volume.

Panel lock function

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.



❑ Disabling all key button operations

1 **Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Press △▽ to select "FP/VOL LOCK ON".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
All button operations except ⏻ **ON/STANDBY** are disabled.

❑ Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

1 **Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Press △▽ to select "FP LOCK ON".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
All button operations except ⏻ **ON/STANDBY** and **VOLUME** are disabled.

See overleaf

❑ Canceling the Panel lock function

1 **Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

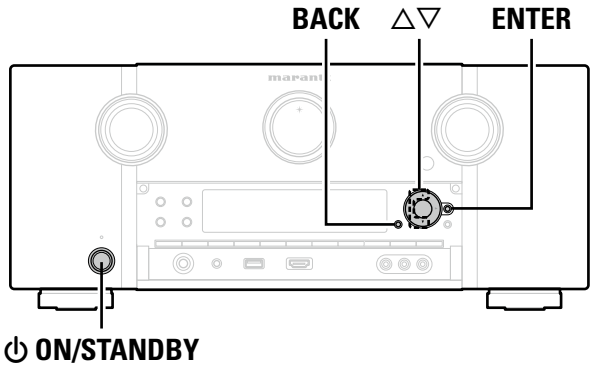
2 **Press △▽ to select "FP LOCK ＊Off".**
(＊ The currently set mode.)

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
The Panel lock function is canceled.

Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

Remote lock function

- When not connecting an IR receiver, disable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.
- By default, this function is disabled.



❑ Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

1 **When the main unit is in standby mode, press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while holding down BACK and ENTER on the main unit.**

2 **Press △▽ to select "RC LOCK On".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
The infrared light receiving function is disabled.

❑ Enabling the remote sensor function

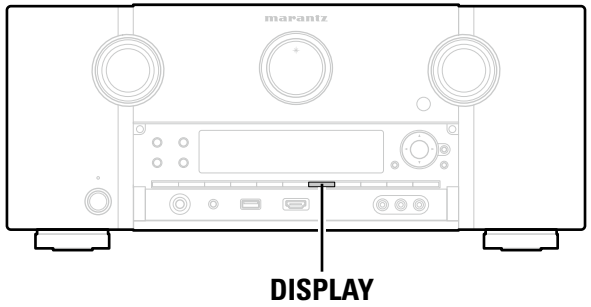
1 **When the main unit is in standby mode, press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while holding down BACK and ENTER on the main unit.**

2 **Press △▽ to select "RC LOCK ＊Off".**
(＊ The currently set mode.)

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
The infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

Switches light illumination on/off

- You can switch the lighting around the main display on or off.
- The factory setting is "ON".



Press and hold DISPLAY on the main unit for 3 seconds.

- Carry out the same procedure if you want to change the settings again.

Various memory functions

Personal memory plus function

This function sets the settings (input mode, sound mode, HDMI output mode, MultEQ® XT, Dynamic EQ, audio delay etc.) last selected for the individual input sources.

The surround parameters, tone settings and the volumes of the different speakers are stored for the individual sound modes.

Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.
When the power is turned back on, the settings are restored.

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)

- You can operate this unit so as to enjoy audio in a room (ZONE2, ZONE3) other than the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located).
- You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.
- When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connector in ZONE2 (**HDMI ZONE2 function**).

The source selected for ZONE2 is also output from the recording output connectors (MEDIA PLAYER).

NOTE

The following restrictions apply to the HDMI ZONE2 function.

- If you select a same input source for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, audio playback may be restricted or video may be interrupted.
- Video may not be output depending on the resolution of the TV used for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2. In this case, use your player to set the resolution of the TV.
- The HDMI audio signals for the input source selected in ZONE2 are not output from the ZONE2 speakers.
- When HDMI ZONE2 function is used, you cannot set the following.
  - Picture Adjust
  - Auto Lip Sync
  - Video Mode
  - Video Conversion
  - i/p Scaler
  - Progressive Mode
  - Aspect Ratio
  - Setup menu display

Audio output

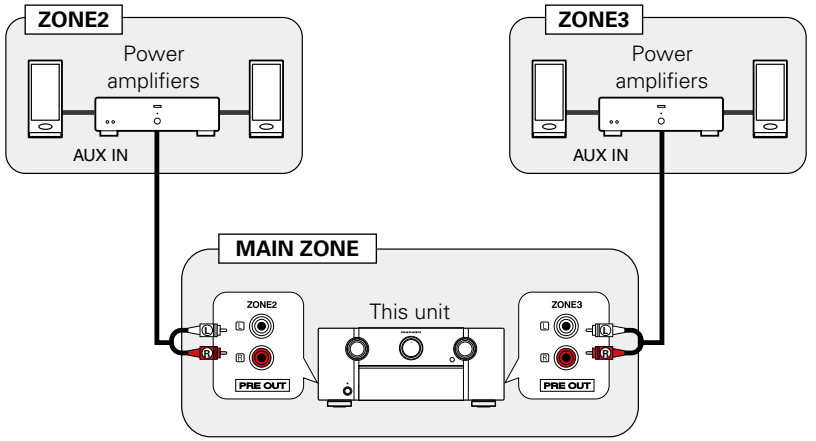
It is possible to play 2-channel audio in rooms other than the MAIN ZONE where multi-channel playback is done. Choose one of the methods.

- Zone playback by audio output (PRE OUT)
  Use an external amplifier.

Zone playback by audio output (PRE OUT)

❑ Audio connections (ZONE2, ZONE3)

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output terminals are output to the ZONE2 and ZONE3 amplifiers and played on these amplifiers.



We recommend using high quality pin-plug cables for audio connections in order to prevent noise.

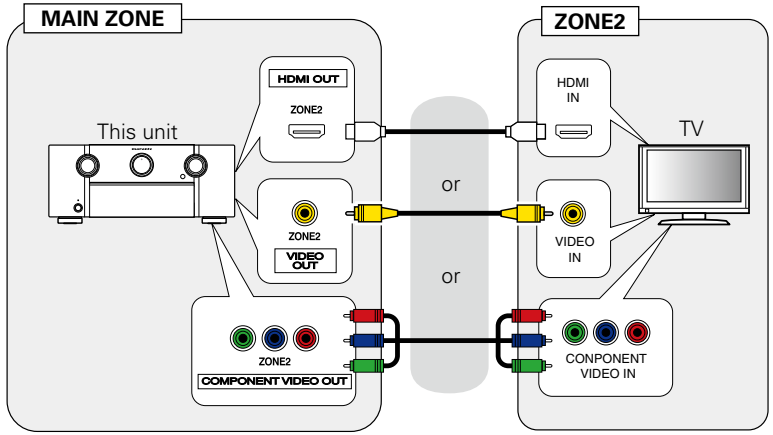
NOTE

In ZONE2 or ZONE3, the digital audio signals input from the HDMI, COAXIAL or OPTICAL connector cannot be played back. When playing back in ZONE2 or ZONE3, make an analog connection.

Video output

Video Connection

The video signals of this unit's ZONE2 video output connector are played by the ZONE2 TV.



When "Component Video Out" (☞page 119) in the menu is set to "ZONE2", the component video output connector outputs the ZONE2 video.

NOTE

The menu screen is not output.

Playback

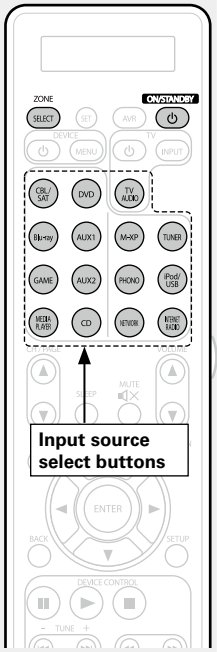
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

2 **Press ON/STANDBY ⏻ to turn on the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.**

- Also press input source select button when in standby mode, the power turns on.
- When **ON/STANDBY** ⏻ is pressed, ZONE2 or ZONE3 turns off.
- Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing **ZONE2 ON/OFF** or **ZONE3 ON/OFF** on the main unit.

3 **Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played.**

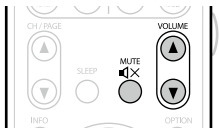
The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2 or ZONE3.



When power for both MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 is set to ON, power of the MAIN ZONE only can be turned off. In Step 1, press **ZONE SELECT** to select "MAIN" and then press **ON/STANDBY** ⏻.

Adjusting the volume

Use **VOLUME** ▲▼ to adjust the volume.



[Adjustable range] **0 – 40 – 98**
(When the "Scale" (☞page 112) setting is "0 – 98")

[Adjustable range] **– – –** **–79dB – –40dB – 18dB**
(When the "Scale" (☞page 112) setting is "–79.5dB – 18.0dB")

- At time of purchase, "Volume Limit" (☞page 135) is set to "70 (–10dB)".

Turn **VOLUME** after pressing **ZONE SELECT** on the main unit to adjust the sound volume.

Turning off the sound temporarily

Press **MUTE** 🔇.
The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" (☞page 135) in the menu.

- To cancel, either adjust the volume or press **MUTE** 🔇 again.
- The setting can also be cancelled by adjusting the volume or turning off the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.

You can adjust the tone and volume for ZONE2 or ZONE3 in "ZONE2 Setup" or "ZONE3 Setup" (☞page 135) in the menu.

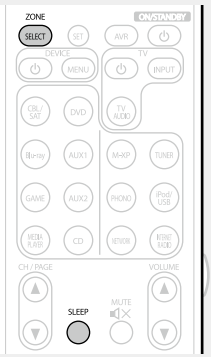
Sleep timer function

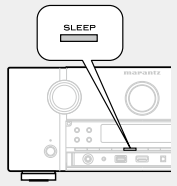
- This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep in ZONE2 or ZONE3.
- The sleep timer function can be set by zone.

1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

2 **Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**

- If **SLLEP** on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.





- The time switches as shown below each time **SLEEP** is pressed.

Off → 10 min → 20 → 30 → 40 → 50 → 60 → 70 → 80 → 90 → 100 → 110 → 120

To confirm the countdown time before putting the unit to sleep

Press **SLEEP**.
"Z2 Sleep : ✻min" or "Z3 Sleep : ✻min" appears on the display.
✻ Countdown time

To cancel the sleep timer

Press **SLEEP** to set "Off".

The sleep timer is also cancelled when this unit is set to the standby mode or the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power is turned off.

NOTE

The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

How to make detailed settings

Menu map

For menu operation, connect a TV to this unit and display the menu on the TV screen. For menu operations, see the following page.
By default, this unit has recommended settings defined. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Audio	**Surround Parameter**	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	109
	Tone	Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.	110
	Dialogue Level	Sets the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.	110
	Subwoofer Level	Sets the subwoofer on/off and its output level.	111
	M-DAX	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio to enable richer audio playback.	111
	Audio Delay	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	112
	Volume	Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	112
	Audyssey	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® settings.	112
	Graphic EQ	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	114
Video	**Picture Adjust**	Adjusts the video quality.	116
	HDMI Setup	Makes settings for HDMI video/audio output.	116
	Output Settings	Makes screen-related settings.	118
	Component Video Out	Sets whether to use the component video output connector for MAIN ZONE or ZONE2.	119
	Volume Display	Sets where to display the master volume level.	119
	Info Display	Displays status of operation temporarily when the sound mode is changed, or input source is switched. You can set whether or not to show each of these status displays.	119
	Audio Display	Sets how long each menu is displayed when the input source is "NETWORK", "iPod/USB", or "HD Radio".	120
	TV Format	Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	120

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Inputs	**Input Assign**	Changes input connector assignment.	122
	Source Rename	Changes the display name for this source.	123
	Hide Sources	Remove from the display input sources that are not used.	124
	Source Level	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	124
	Input Select	Sets the audio input mode and decode mode.	124
	Video Source	Video of another input source is played back combined with the playing audio.	125
Speakers	**Audyssey® Setup**	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	29, 88
	Manual Setup	Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.	127
Network	**Information**	Display network information.	131
	IP Control	Set the network function on/off during standby.	131
	Friendly Name	The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	131
	Settings	Make settings for wired LAN.	132
	Maintenance Mode	Use when receiving maintenance from a marantz service engineer or custom installer.	133

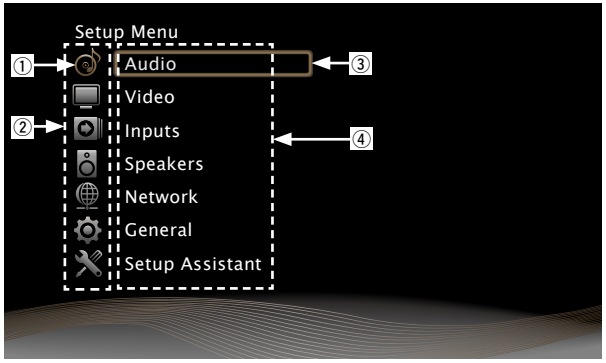
See overleaf

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
General	**Language**	Sets the language for display the menu on the TV screen.	135
	ZONE2 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback in a ZONE2 system.	135
	ZONE3 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback in a ZONE3 system.	135
	Zone Rename	Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	136
	Trigger Out 1	Selects when to activate trigger out 1.	136
	Trigger Out 2	Selects when to activate trigger out 2.	136
	Auto Standby	When you do not perform any operation on this unit with no audio or video input for a specified time, this unit automatically enters the standby mode. Before it enters the standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the display of this unit and the menu screen.	136
	Front Display	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	136
	Information	Show information about receiver settings, input signals, etc.	137
	Firmware	Set whether or not to check for firmware update, update the firmware, and display update and upgrade notifications.	138
	Setup Lock	Protect settings from inadvertent change.	139
Setup Assistant	Perform the installation, connection, and setup procedures to prepare the unit for operation following guidance.		7

Examples of menu screen displays

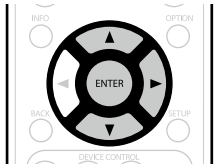
Typical examples are described below.

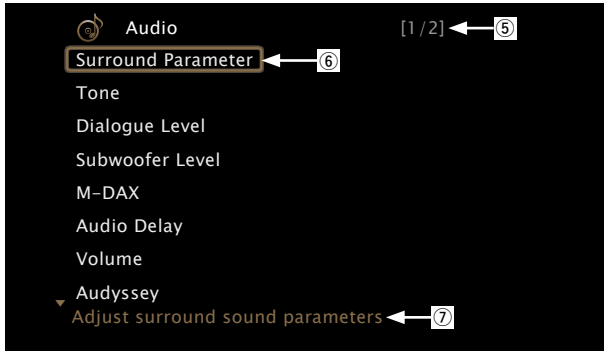
[Example 1]
Menu selection screen (Top menu)



① Currently selected setup icon
② List of GUI menu setup icons
③ Currently selected setup item
④ List of GUI menu setup items

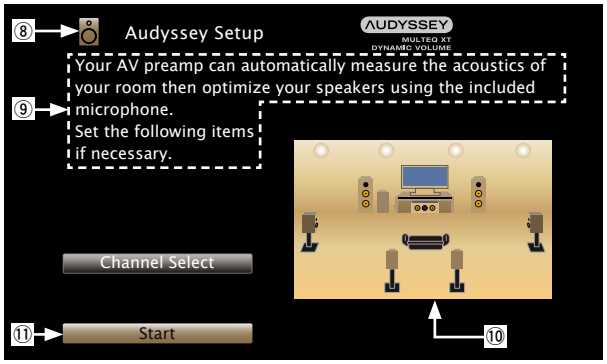
Use △▽ to select "Audio" and then press ▷. (Or press ENTER.)





⑤ Indication of there being following pages
⑥ Selected setup item
⑦ Guide text for the currently selected setup item

[Example 2]
Audyssey® Setup screen (with illustration)



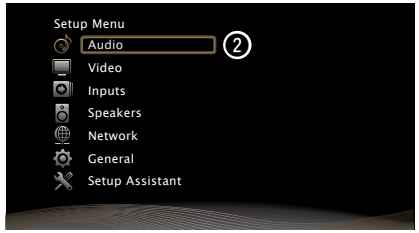
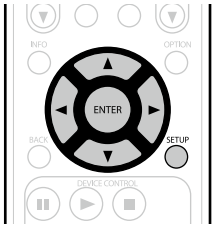
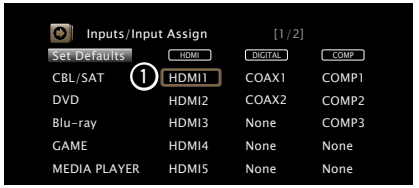
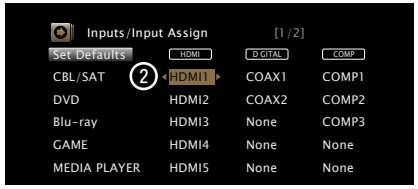
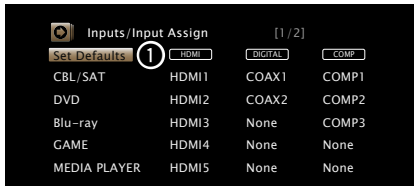
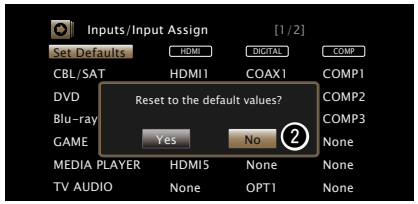
⑧ Currently selected setup icon
⑨ Operation guidance text
⑩ Illustration
⑪ Selected setup item

NOTE

When the menu is operated on a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.

Examples of menu and front display

Below we describe typical examples of displays on the TV screen and on the set's display window.

	Menu display	Front display	Description
Top menu display			❶ Press **SETUP** to display the menu screen. ❷ TV screen: Displays the selected line. Display: Displays the selected item. • Use △▽ to move to the item you want to set. 
Display when changing settings	 Press **ENTER**. 	 Press **ENTER**. 	❶ TV screen: Displays the selected line. Display: Displays the selected item. • Use △▽ to move to the item you want to set. ❷ Press **ENTER** to set to the mode in which the setting can be made. ❸ ◄ ► is displayed at the sides of items whose setting can be changed. Use ◁ ▷ to change to the desired setting.
Display when returning to the settings in effect at time of purchase	 Press **ENTER**. 	 Press **ENTER**. 	❶ Press △ to select "Set Defaults", then press **ENTER**. ❷ Press ◁ to select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

Inputting characters

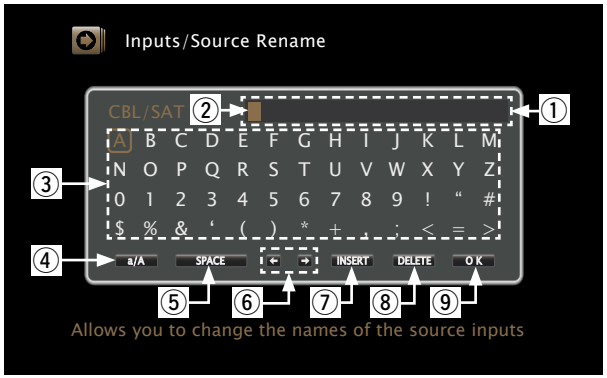
On this unit, you can change the name displayed on the following screens to the names that you prefer.

- Text Search (☞page 71)
- Preset Name (☞page 51)
- Source Rename (☞page 123)
- Friendly Name (☞page 131)
- Zone Rename (☞page 136)
- Character input for the network functions (☞page 54, 62, 64, 67, 69, 133)

Keyboard screen

Select a character on the TV screen to input characters.

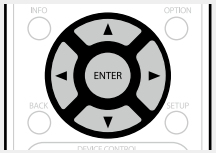
❑ Display of a keyboard input screen



① Character input section
② Cursor
③ Keyboard section
④ Uppercase and lowercase switch key
⑤ Space key
⑥ Cursor keys
⑦ Insert key
⑧ Delete key
⑨ OK key

❑ Input method

1 **Display the screen for inputting characters (☞page 103 "Menu map").**



2 **Select a character to be changed.**

① **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select ← or →.**

② **Press ENTER to place the cursor at the character to be changed.**

Each time **ENTER** is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

3 **Select a character to be input with △▽◁ ▷ then press ENTER.**

- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

[Upper case characters/Numbers/Symbols]
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
0123456789
! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , ; < = >
[Lower case characters/Numbers/Symbols]
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
0123456789
. @ - _ / : ~ ? [\ ] ^ ' { | }

4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change the name.**

5 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select OK, then press ENTER.**

Audio

GUI

Make audio-related settings.

Menu operation

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch "MAIN".

2 Press **SETUP**.
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.

4 Press **ENTER** or ▷ to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

Items that can be set with the "Audio" procedure

Surround Parameter (☞page 109)

Tone (☞page 110)

Dialogue Level (☞page 110)

Subwoofer Level (☞page 111)

M-DAX (☞page 111)

Audio Delay (☞page 112)

Volume (☞page 112)

Audyssey (☞page 112)

Graphic EQ (☞page 114)

Surround Parameter

Default settings are underlined.

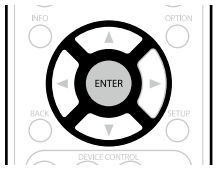
You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.
The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞page 158).

NOTE

- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- When the sound mode is "PURE DIRECT", you cannot set the surround parameters.

Setting items	Setting details
Home Theater EQ Softens the treble range of movie soundtracks for better understanding.	**On** : "Home Theater EQ" is used. **Off** : "Home Theater EQ" is not used.
Loudness Management This can be set in the Dolby TrueHD mode. This sets whether to output as specified in "Dynamic Compression" or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.	**On** : Outputs using the settings made in "Dynamic Compression". **Off** : "Dynamic Compression" settings and "Dialogue normalization" (☞page 137) are disabled, and the signals on the disk are output as is.
Dynamic Compression Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).	**Auto** : Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source. **Low** / **Medium** / **High** : These set the compression level. **Off** : Dynamic range compression always off. You can set "Auto" only for the Dolby TrueHD source.
Low Frequency Effects Adjust the low-frequency effects level (LFE).	❑ **When "Input Mode" (☞page 124) is set other than to "7.1CH IN"** **–10dB – 0dB** ❑ **When "Input Mode" (☞page 124) is set to "7.1CH IN"** **0dB / +5dB / +10dB / +15dB** For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below. • Dolby Digital sources : "0dB" • DTS movie sources : "0dB" • DTS music sources : "–10dB"
Center Image Distributes the dialogue output from the center channel to the front left and right channels and widens the sound image in the front. You can set this when the sound mode is set to DTS NEO:6 in the "Music" mode.	**0.0 – 1.0 (0.3)** The smaller the value, the more dialogue is concentrated on the center channel. The larger the value, the more dialogue is distributed to front left and right channels, and the more the sound image widens in the front.
Panorama Assign front L/R signal also to surround channels for wider sound. You can set this when the sound mode is Dolby PLII in the "Music" mode.	**On** : Set. **Off** : Do not set.
Dimension Shift sound image center to front or rear to adjust playback balance. You can set this when the sound mode is Dolby PLII in the "Music" mode.	**0 – 6 (3)** As you set a smaller number, the surround sound field shifts backward; as you set a larger number, the surround sound field shifts forward.

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Center Width Distributes the dialogue output from the center channel to left and right channels and widens the sound image in the front. You can set this when the sound mode is Dolby PLIIx in the "Music" mode.	**0 – 7 (3)** The smaller the value, the more dialogue is concentrated on the center channel. The larger the value, the more dialogue is distributed to front left and right channels, and the more the sound image widens in the front.
Height Gain Control the front height channel volume.	**Low** : Reduce the front height channel volume. **Normal** : Front height channel sound is output with standard sound volume. **High** : Increase the front height channel volume. NOTE "Height Gain" is displayed for the following settings. • When the "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" setting (☞page 128) is set other than to "None". • When sound mode is "PLIIz" or the PLIIz decoder is used.
Speaker Select Make settings for the speakers outputting sound when playing back in original surround mode.	**Surround Back** : Sound is output from the surround back speakers. **Height** : Sound is output from the front height speakers. **Wide** : Sound is output from the front wide speakers. **Off** : Sound is not output from the surround back speakers, front wide speakers and front height speakers. NOTE Only speakers that are set to something other than "None" in "Speaker Config." (☞page 127) can be selected.
Set Defaults The "Surround Parameter" settings are returned to the default settings.	**Yes** : Reset to the defaults. **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. When you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**. 

Tone

Default settings are underlined.

Adjust the tonal quality of the sound.

Setting items	Setting details
Tone Control Set the tone control function to "On" and "Off".	**On** : Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble). **Off** : Playback without tone adjustment. "Tone Control" can be set when "Dynamic EQ" (☞page 113) is set to "Off". NOTE • "Tone Control" settings are not reflected to ZONE2 and ZONE3. • The tone cannot be adjusted in the "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT" mode.
Bass Adjust bass.	**–6dB – +6dB (0dB)** "Bass" can be set when the menu "Tone Control" setting is "On".
Treble Adjust treble.	**–6dB – +6dB (0dB)** "Treble" can be set when the menu "Tone Control" setting is "On".

Dialogue Level

Default settings are underlined.

Sets the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.

Setting items	Setting details
Dialogue	**–12.0dB – +12.0dB (0dB)**

Subwoofer Level

Default settings are underlined.

Sets the subwoofer on/off and its output level.

Setting items	Setting details
Subwoofer Turn subwoofer output on and off.	**On** : The subwoofer is used. **Off** : The subwoofer is not used. NOTE This can be set when the sound mode is "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT" (☞page 77) and the "Subwoofer Mode" (☞page 128) is "LFE+Main".
Subwoofer Level Set the subwoofer output level.	**–12.0dB – +12.0dB (0dB)**

M-DAX

Default settings are underlined.

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The M-DAX function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also corrects the sense of volume of the bass to obtain richer sound with compressed audio signals.

Setting items	Setting details
Mode Set the mode for M-DAX.	**Off** : Do not use M-DAX. **Low** : Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs. **Mid** : Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources. **High** : Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs. • This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. • "M-DAX" settings are stored for each input source. • When set to "Off", the M-DAX indicator on the front panel switches off. • This cannot be set when the surround mode is set to "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT". • This can also be set by pressing **M-DAX** on the main unit. Each time **M-DAX** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. Off → Low → Mid → High → Off

Audio Delay

Default settings are underlined.

While viewing video, manually adjust the time to delay audio output.

Setting details
0ms – 200ms

- This item can be set within the range of 0 to 100 ms when "Auto Lip Sync" (☞page 116) is set to "On" and when a TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync is connected.
- Store "Audio Delay" for each input source.
- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" (☞page 118) is set to "Auto" or "Game".

Volume

Default settings are underlined.

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

Setting items	Setting details
Scale Set how volume is displayed.	**0 – 98** : Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98. **–79.5dB – 18.0dB** : Display —dB (Min), in the range –79.5 dB to 18.0 dB. • The "Scale" setting is applied also to the "Limit" and "Power On Level" display method. • The "Scale" setting applies to all zones.
Limit Make a setting for maximum volume.	**Off** : Do not set a maximum volume. **60 (–20dB) / 70 (–10dB) / 80 (0dB)**
Power On Level Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.	**Last** : Use the memorized setting from the last session. **Mute** : Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on. **1 – 98 (–79dB – 18dB)** : The volume is adjusted to the set level.
Mute Level Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.	**Full** : The sound is muted entirely. **–40dB** : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down. **–20dB** : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Audyssey

Default settings are underlined.

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed. For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see page 166.

NOTE

- If you have not performed Audyssey® Setup, or if you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, you may not be able to select Dynamic EQ/Dynamic Volume.
  In this case, either perform Audyssey® Setup over again or perform "Restore..." (☞page 35) to return to the settings after Audyssey® Setup was run.
- When HD Audio for which the sampling frequency exceeds 96 kHz is played back, the "Audyssey" cannot be set.

Setting items	Setting details
MultEQ® XT MultEQ® XT compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on "Audyssey® Setup" measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the "Audyssey" setting. MultEQ® XT is the prerequisite function for Dynamic EQ and Dynamic Volume.	**Audyssey** : Optimize the frequency response of all speakers. **Audyssey Byp. L/R** : Optimize frequency response of speakers except front L and R speakers. **Audyssey Flat** : Optimize frequency response of all speakers to flat response. **Graphic EQ** : Apply frequency response set with "Graphic EQ" (☞page 114). **Off** : Turn "MultEQ® XT" equalizer off. • "Audyssey", "Audyssey Byp. L/R" and "Audyssey Flat" can be selected after "Audyssey® Setup" has been performed. "Audyssey" is automatically selected after performing "Audyssey® Setup". When "Audyssey", "Audyssey Byp. L/R" or "Audyssey Flat" is selected, AUDYSSEY illuminates. • After running "Audyssey® Setup", if the Speaker Configuration, Distance, Channel Level, and Crossover Frequency have changed without increasing the number of speakers measured, only AUDYSSEY illuminates. **NOTE** When using headphones, "MultEQ® XT" is automatically set to "Off".

"MultEQ® XT", "Dynamic EQ" and "Dynamic Volume" settings are stored for each input source.

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Dynamic EQ Solve the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Works with MultEQ® XT.	**On** : Use Dynamic EQ. **Off** : Do not use Dynamic EQ. • AUDYSSEY is displayed when set to "On". • This can also be set by pressing **DYNAMIC EQ** on the main unit. Each time **DYNAMIC EQ** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. On ⟷ Off **NOTE** When the menu "Dynamic EQ" setting is "On", it is not possible to do "Tone Control" (☞page 110) adjustment.
Reference Level Offset Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels are shown at right.	**0dB** (Film Ref) : This is the default setting and should be used when listening to movies. **5dB** : Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music. **10dB** : Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference. **15dB** : Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range. Setting is enabled when "Dynamic EQ" is "On" (☞page 113).

Setting items	Setting details
Dynamic Volume Solve the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.	**Heavy** : Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds. **Medium** : Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound. **Light** : Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds. **Off** : Do not use "Dynamic Volume". • AUDYSSEY is displayed when set to "Heavy", "Medium" or "Light". • If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup" (☞page 33), the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". • This can also be set by pressing **DYNAMIC VOL** on the main unit. Each time **DYNAMIC VOL** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. Off → Heavy → Medium → Light → Off
Audyssey DSX® Provides more immersive surround sound by adding the new channels.	**On–Height–** : Turn on A-DSX processing for height expansion. **On–Wide–** : Turn on A-DSX processing for wide expansion. **Off** : Do not set Audyssey DSX®. This can also be set by pressing **A-DSX** on the main unit. Each time **A-DSX** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. Off → On–Height– → On–Wide– → Off **NOTE** "Audyssey DSX®" cannot be configured if the HD Audio source being played includes Front height and Front wide channels. In this case, the respective channels are played back using the input signals.

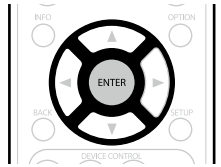
☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Stage Height Adjust sound stage height when using front height speakers.	**–10 – +10 (0)** • "Audyssey DSX®" can be set when you are using front height speakers or front wide speakers. • "Audyssey DSX®" is only valid when using a center speaker. • "Audyssey DSX®" is valid when surround mode is DOLBY listening mode or DTS listening mode other than PLIIz Height. **About Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion (A-DSX)** Audyssey DSX® is a scalable system that adds new speakers to improve surround impression. Starting with a 5.1 system Audyssey DSX® first adds Wide channels for the biggest impact on envelopment. Research in human hearing has proven that information from the Wide channels is much more critical in the presentation of a realistic soundstage than the Back Surround channels found in traditional 7.1 systems. Audyssey DSX® then creates a pair of Height channels to reproduce the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues. In addition to these new Wide and Height channels, Audyssey DSX® applies Surround Envelopment Processing to enhance the blend between the front and surround channels.
Stage Width Adjust sound stage width when using front wide speakers.	**–10 – +10 (0)**

Graphic EQ

Default settings are underlined.

Use the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.
"Graphic EQ" can be set when "MultEQ® XT" setting (☞page 112) is "Graphic EQ".

Setting items	Setting details
Speaker Selection Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.	**All** : Adjust the tone of all speakers together. **Left/Right** : Adjust the tone of left and right speakers together. **Each** : Adjust the tone of each speaker.
Adjust EQ Adjust tones for each frequency band. Adjust the speaker selected in "Speaker Selection".	① Select the speaker. ② Select the adjustment frequency band. **63Hz / 125Hz / 250Hz / 500Hz / 1kHz / 2kHz / 4kHz / 8kHz / 16kHz** • Select the speakers you want to adjust when "Left/Right" or "Each" is selected. ③ Adjust the level. **–20.0dB – +6.0dB (0.0dB)**
Curve Copy Copy "Audyssey Flat" (☞page 112) curve from MultEQ® XT.	**Yes** : Copy. **No** : Do not copy. • "Curve Copy" is displayed after "Audyssey® Setup" has been performed. • When you select "Curve Copy" and press **ENTER**, the "Copy "Audyssey Flat"?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**.
Set Defaults The "Graphic EQ" settings are returned to the default settings.	**Yes** : Reset to the defaults. **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. When you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**. 

Video

GUI

Make video-related settings.

NOTE

When HDMI ZONE2 function is used, these settings are not available.

Menu operation

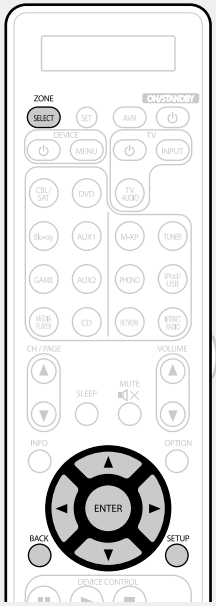
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch “MAIN”.**

2 **Press SETUP.**
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.**

4 **Press ENTER or ▷ to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the “Video” procedure

- **Picture Adjust** (☞page 116)
- **HDMI Setup** (☞page 116)
- **Output Settings** (☞page 118)
- **Component Video Out** (☞page 119)
- **Volume Display** (☞page 119)
- **Info Display** (☞page 119)
- **Audio Display** (☞page 120)
- **TV Format** (☞page 120)

Picture Adjust

Default settings are underlined.

Picture quality can be adjusted.
We recommend leaving the settings unchanged from the default settings. First adjust the display image quality on your TV, and use this menu only when you want to make fine adjustments.

- This item can be set when the input source is **CBL/SAT** **DVD** **Blu-ray** **GAME** **AUX1** **AUX2** **MEDIA PLAYER** **CD** **NETWORK** **TV AUDIO**.
- With input sources other than the ones above, this item can be set when "Video Select" is selected. In this case, the original input source settings are called out.
- Can be set when the "Video Conversion" setting (☞page 118) is "On".
- "Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX2", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be set when "HDMI" or "COMP" (☞page 122, 123) has been assigned.

Setting items	Setting details
Contrast Adjust picture contrast.	**–6 – +6 (0)**
Brightness Adjust picture brightness.	**0 – +12**
Saturation Adjust picture chroma level (saturation).	**–6 – +6 (0)**
Hue Adjust green and red balance.	**–6 – +6 (0)**
Noise Reduction Reduce overall video noise.	**Off / Low / Medium / High**
Enhancer Emphasize picture contours.	**0 – +12**

- "Picture Adjust" can not be set when video and component video signals are output.
- "Picture Adjust" can not be set when 4K signals are input.

HDMI Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

Setting items	Setting details
Auto Lip Sync Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output.	**On** : Compensated. **Off** : Not compensated.
HDMI Audio Out Select HDMI audio output device.	**AVP** : Play back through speakers connected to Power Amplifier. (Audio is output from the PRE OUT terminal0 on this unit.) **TV** : Play back through TV connected to the unit. • The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV. Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI output connector. • When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting (☞page 92 "HDMI control function").

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Video Output Make settings for HDMI monitor output.	**Auto (Dual)** : The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used. **Monitor 1** : A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used. Video is not output from the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector. **Monitor 2** : A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used. Video is not output from the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector. • If both the HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors are connected and "Resolution" (☞page 118) is set to "Auto", the signals are output with a resolution compatible with both TV. • With "Resolution" (☞page 118) not set to "Auto", check whether the TV you are using is compatible with the resolution under "Video" – "Monitor" (☞page 137). • This can also be set by pressing **HDMI OUT** on the main unit. Each time **HDMI OUT** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. Auto (Dual) → Monitor 1 → Monitor 2 → **NOTE** Depending on the monitor you have connected, the display may not be correct when you set to "Auto (Dual)". In such a case, set to either "Monitor 1" or "Monitor 2".
HDMI Control You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.	**On** : Use HDMI control function. **Off** : Do not use HDMI control function. • When a device that is not compatible with the HDMI control function is connected, set "HDMI Control" to "Off". • Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings. • Refer to "HDMI control function" (☞page 92) for more information about the HDMI control function. **NOTE** • **When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power.** If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet. • The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control. • If the "HDMI Control" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

Setting items	Setting details
Standby Source Sets the HDMI input source to put into standby when the power is on.	**Last** : Enters standby with the previously used input source. **CBL/SAT** / **DVD** / **Blu-ray** / **GAME** / **AUX1** / **AUX2** / **MEDIA PLAYER** / **CD** : Enters standby with each of the input sources assigned to each input connector. "Standby Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".
Control Monitor Set the HDMI MONITOR terminal to output the HDMI control signal.	**Monitor 1** : Output from the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector. **Monitor 2** : Output from the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector. • "Control Monitor" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". • ARC function works only with the terminal selected by "Control Monitor".
Power Off Control Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.	**All** : If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. **Video** : If power to a connected TV is turned off when the input source is CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX1 / AUX2 / MEDIA PLAYER / CD, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. **Off** : This unit does not link with power to a TV. "Power Off Control" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".

Output Settings

Default settings are underlined.

Makes screen-related settings.

* "Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX2", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be set when "HDMI" or "COMP" (☞page 122, 123) has been assigned.

"Output Settings" can not be set when 4K signals are input.

Setting items	Setting details
Video Mode Make settings for video processing. CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* TV AUDIO*	**Auto** : Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information. **Game** : Always process video for game content. **Movie** : Always process video for movie content. • If "Video Mode" is set to "Auto", the mode is switched according to the input contents. • If a source is played in both MAIN ZONE (audio and video) and ZONE2 (audio only) modes in the same room, audio in MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 modes may sound out of synchronization, but this is not malfunction. In this case, setting to "Game" mode may improve audio synchronization.
Video Conversion The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV (☞page 6 "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)"). CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* TV AUDIO*	**On** : The input video signal is converted. **Off** : The input video signal is not converted. • When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. In this case set "Video Conversion" to "Off". • When "Video Conversion" is set to "Off", the video conversion function does not work. In this case, connect this unit and TV with the same type of cable.
i/p Scaler Convert the input source resolution to the resolution set. CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* NETWORK TV AUDIO*	**Analog** : Use i/p scaler function for analog video signal. **Analog & HDMI** : Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal. **HDMI** : Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signal. **Off** : Do not use i/p scaler function. • "Analog & HDMI" can be set for input sources for which an HDMI input connector is assigned. • Which items can be set depend on the input source assigned to each input connector. • This function is not effective when the input signal is "x.v.Color", 3D, sYCC 601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC 601 color or computer resolution.
Resolution Set the output resolution. You can set "Resolution" separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input. CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* NETWORK TV AUDIO*	**Auto** : The number of pixels the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT connector supports is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set. **480p/576p** / **1080i** / **720p** / **1080p** / **1080p:24Hz** / **4K** : Set the output resolution. • This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". • When "i/p Scaler" is set to "Analog & HDMI", the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. • To watch 1080p/24Hz pictures, use a TV that supports 1080p/24Hz video signals. • When set to "1080p:24Hz", you can enjoy film-like pictures for film sources (in 24 Hz). For video sources and mixed sources, we recommend setting the resolution to "1080p". • It is not possible to convert a 50 Hz signal into 1080p/24Hz. It is output at a resolution of 1080p/50Hz.

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Progressive Mode Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal. CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* TV AUDIO*	**Auto** : The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set. **Video** : Select mode suitable for video playback. **Video and Film** : Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback. This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".
Aspect Ratio Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI. CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray* GAME* AUX1 AUX2* MEDIA PLAYER CD* NETWORK TV AUDIO*	**16:9** : Output at 16:9 aspect ratio. **4:3** : Output at 4:3 aspect ratio. "Aspect Ratio" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".

* "Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX2", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be set when "HDMI" or "COMP" (☞page 122, 123) has been assigned.

Component Video Out

Default settings are underlined.

Sets the zone to which the component video output connector is assigned.

Setting items	Setting details
Component	**MAIN ZONE** : Assigns the component video output connector to MAIN ZONE. **ZONE2** : Assigns the component video output connector to ZONE2.

Volume Display

Default settings are underlined.

Sets where to display the master volume level.

Setting items	Setting details
Volume	**Bottom** : Display at the bottom. **Top** : Display at the top. **Off** : Turn display off. When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed on movie subtitles, set to "Top".

Info Display

Default settings are underlined.

Displays status of operation temporarily when the sound mode is changed, or input source is switched. You can set whether or not to show each of these status displays.

Setting items	Setting details
On-screen Info	**On** : Turn display on. **Off** : Turn display off.

Audio Display

Default settings are underlined.

Sets how long each menu is displayed when the input source is “NETWORK”, “iPod/USB”, or “HD Radio”.

Setting items	Setting details
Audio	**Always** : Show display continuously. **30s** : Show display for 30 seconds after operation. **10s** : Show display for 10 seconds after operation. **Off** : Turn display off.

TV Format

Default settings are underlined.

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

Setting items	Setting details
Format	**NTSC** : Select NTSC output. **PAL** : Select PAL output. “Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. **1.** Press and hold the main unit’s **STATUS** and **ZONE SELECT** for at least 3 seconds. “V.Format : <NTSC>” appears on the display. **2.** Use the main unit’s ◁ ▷ and set the video signal format. **3.** Press the main unit’s **ENTER** to complete the setting. **NOTE** When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.

Inputs

GUI

Perform settings related to input source playback.
• You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

Menu operation

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch "MAIN".

2 Press **SETUP**.
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.

4 Press **ENTER** or ▷ to enter the setting.

• To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
• Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed.
The menu display disappears.

Items that can be set with the "Inputs" procedure

Input Assign (☞page 122)
Source Rename (☞page 123)
Hide Sources (☞page 124)
Source Level (☞page 124)
Input Select (☞page 124)
Video Source (☞page 125)

Important information

❑ About the display of input sources

In this section, the configurable input sources for each item are shown as follows.

CBL/SAT | DVD | Blu-ray | GAME | AUX1 | AUX2 | MEDIA PLAYER | iPod/USB | CD | HD Radio | NETWORK | TV AUDIO | M-XPort | PHONO

NOTE

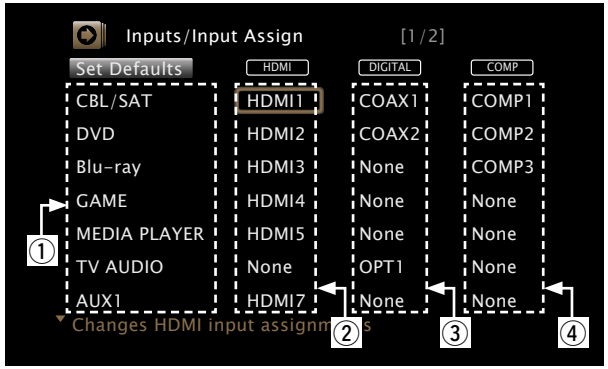
Input sources that have been set to "Hide" at "Hide Sources" (☞page 124) cannot be selected.

Input Assign

This unit has certain input sources such as "CBL/SAT" assigned to audio and video connectors by default. By making the default connections, you can simply press an input source select button to play back audio or video from the connected device with ease.
When making connections other than the default settings, you must change settings in this section.

Examples of "Input Assign" menu screen displays

This screen appears when the "Inputs" – "each input source" – "Input Assign" menu is selected. Use the "Input Assign" menu to change the ② HDMI input connectors, ③ Digital input connectors, and ④ component input connectors that are assigned to the ① input sources in default settings.

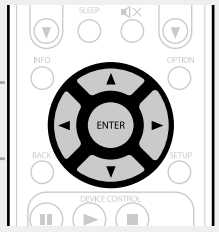


Input assignments menu operations

1 Use △▽◁▷ to move the cursor to the item you want to set, and then press **ENTER**.

2 Use ◁ ▷ to select the input connector to be assigned.

3 Press **ENTER** to register the setting.



Setting items	Setting details
HDMI Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources. **CBL/SAT** **DVD** **Blu-ray** **GAME** **AUX1** **AUX2** **MEDIA PLAYER** **CD** **TV AUDIO**	**HDMI 1** / **HDMI 2** / **HDMI 3** / **HDMI 4** / **HDMI 5** / **HDMI 6** / **HDMI 7** : Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source. **None** : Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source. • At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

Input source	CBL/SAT	DVD	Blu-ray	GAME	AUX1
Default setting	HDMI 1	HDMI 2	HDMI 3	HDMI 4	HDMI 7

Input source	AUX2	MEDIA PLAYER	CD	TV AUDIO
Default setting	HDMI 6	HDMI 5	None	None

- An input source to which an HDMI input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as "– – –".
- To play the video signal assigned at "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" – "DIGITAL", select "Digital" at "Input Mode" (☞page 124).
- The audio signals input from the analog and digital connectors are not output to the monitor.
- When "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) is set to "On", HDMI input connector cannot be assigned to "TV AUDIO".

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
DIGITAL Set this to change the digital input connectors assigned to the input sources. CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX1 / AUX2 / MEDIA PLAYER / CD / TV AUDIO	**COAX 1** / **COAX 2** / **OPT 1** / **OPT 2** : Assign a digital input connector to the selected input source. **None** : Do not assign a digital input connector to the selected input source. • At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

Input source	CBL/SAT	DVD	Blu-ray	GAME	AUX1
Default setting	COAX 1	COAX 2	None	None	None

Input source	AUX2	MEDIA PLAYER	CD	TV AUDIO
Default setting	None	None	OPT 2	OPT 1

COMP
(Component video)
Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX1 / AUX2 / MEDIA PLAYER / CD / TV AUDIO

COMP 1 / **COMP 2** / **COMP 3** : Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.
None : Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.

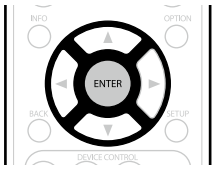
• At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

Input source	CBL/SAT	DVD	Blu-ray	GAME	AUX1
Default setting	COMP 1	COMP 2	COMP 3	None	None

Input source	AUX2	MEDIA PLAYER	CD	TV AUDIO
Default setting	None	None	None	None

An input source to which an component video input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as "– – –".

Setting items	Setting details
Set Defaults The input source name is returned to the default setting.	**Yes** : Reset to the defaults. **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. If you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the message "Reset to the default values?" is displayed. Select "Yes" or "No", and then press **ENTER**.



Source Rename

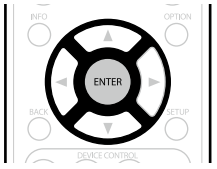
Change the display name of the selected input source.
This is convenient when the input source name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit's display and on the menu screen.

Setting details

CBL/SAT / **DVD** / **Blu-ray** / **GAME** / **AUX1** / **AUX2** / **MEDIA PLAYER** / **CD** / **TV AUDIO** / **M-XPort** / **PHONO** : Change the display name of the selected input source.
• Up to 12 characters can be input.
• For character input, see page 107.

Set Defaults : The input source name is returned to the default setting.
• **Yes** : Reset to the defaults.
• **No** : Do not reset to the defaults.

If you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the message "Reset to the default values?" is displayed. Select "Yes" or "No", and then press **ENTER**.



See overleaf

Hide Sources

Default settings are underlined.

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

Setting details

CBL/SAT / **DVD** / **Blu-ray** / **GAME** / **AUX1** / **AUX2** / **MEDIA PLAYER** / **iPod/USB** / **CD** / **HD Radio** / **NETWORK** / **TV AUDIO** / **M-XPort** / **PHONO** : Select input source that is not used.

- **Show** : Use this source.
- **Hide** : Do not use this source.

NOTE

- Input sources being used in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 or ZONE3 cannot be selected.
- Input sources being used in the various zones cannot be deleted.
- Input sources set to "Hide" cannot be selected using the input source select button.

Source Level

Default settings are underlined.

- This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.
- Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

Setting details

–12dB – +12dB (0dB)

The analog input level and digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (☞page 122).

Input Select

Default settings are underlined.

Set the audio input mode and decode mode of each input source.
The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

Setting items	Setting details
Input Mode Set the audio input modes for the different input sources. It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto".	**Auto** : Automatically detect input signal and perform playback. **HDMI** : Play only signals from HDMI input. **Digital** : Play only signals from digital input. **Analog** : Play only signals from analog input. **7.1CH IN** : Only signals input from the 7.1CH IN connector will be played back. • "Digital" can be set for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (☞page 123). • If the input source is set to "CBL/SAT", "DVD", "Blu-ray", "MEDIA PLAYER", "CD" or "PHONO", it can be set to "Analog". • When digital signals are properly input, the DIG. indicator lights on the display. If the DIG. indicator does not light, check "Input Assign" (☞page 122) and the connections. • If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV" is fixed to ARC. • The surround mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".
Decode Mode Set the audio decode mode for input source. CBL/SAT, DVD, Blu-ray, GAME, AUX1, AUX2, MEDIA PLAYER, CD, TV AUDIO	**Auto** : Detect type of digital input signal and decode and play automatically. **PCM** : Decode and play only PCM input signals. **DTS** : Decode and play only DTS input signals. • This item can be set for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (☞page 122). • Normally set this mode to "Auto". Set "PCM" and "DTS" when inputting the corresponding input signal.

Video Source

Default settings are underlined.

Video of another input source is played back combined with the playing audio.

Setting details

Default : Play the picture and sound of the input source.
CBL/SAT / **DVD** / **Blu-ray** / **GAME** / **AUX1** / **AUX2** / **MEDIA PLAYER** / **TV AUDIO** / **CD** : Select video input source to view. The video of the selected input source is played along with the audio currently being played. This can be set for individual input sources.

"Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX2", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be selected only when "COMP" is assigned to the input source.

NOTE

- It is not possible to select HDMI input signals.
- Input sources for which "Hide" is selected at "Hide Sources" (☞page 124) cannot be selected.

Speakers

GUI

Set when changing Audyssey® Setup settings.

- **If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, it will not be possible to set Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® (☞page 112).**
- **Can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.**

Menu operation

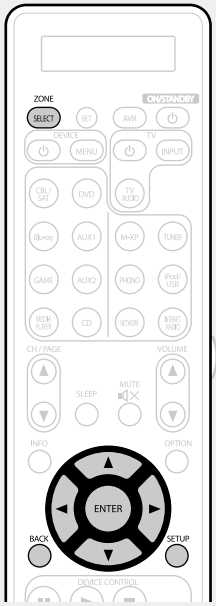
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".**

2 **Press SETUP.**
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.**

4 **Press ENTER or ▷ to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the "Speakers" procedure

Audyssey® Setup (☞page 29, 88)

Manual Setup (☞page 127)

Manual Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, it will not be possible to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® (☞page 112).
- "Manual Setup" can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

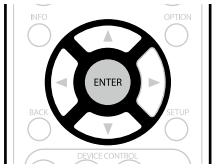
❑ Audio output from each PRE OUT terminal

	PRE OUT Channel						
UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal	FL/FR	C	SW1/SW2	SL/SR	SBL/SBR	HL/HR	WL/WR
BALANCED PRE OUT terminal	FL/FR	C	SW1/SW2	SL/SR	SBL/SBR	---	---
Audio Output	Front	Center	Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2	Surround	Surround Back	Front Height	Front Wide

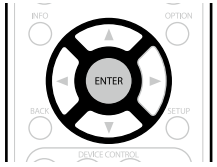
Setting items	Setting details
Speaker Config. Indicate speaker presence and select speaker size categories based on bass reproduction capability. **NOTE** Do not use the outward shape of the speaker to determine selection of a "Large" or "Small" speaker. Instead, use the frequencies set in "Crossovers" (☞page 129) as the standard for determining bass reproduction capability.	**Front** : Set the front speaker size. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large". • When "Front" is set to "Small", "Center", "Surround", "Surr. Back", "Front Height" and "Front Wide" can not be set to "Large".
	Center : Set the presence and size of the center speaker. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • **None** : Select when a center speaker is not connected. "Large" is not displayed when "Front" is set to "Small".
	Subwoofer : Set the presence of a subwoofer. • **Yes** : Use a subwoofer. • **No** : Select when a subwoofer is not connected. When "Front" is set to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "Yes".
	Surround : Set the presence and size of the surround speakers. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • **None** : Select when the surround speakers are not connected. • When "Surround" is set to "Large", "Surr. Back", "Front Height" and "Front Wide" can be set to "Large". • When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr. Back", "Front Height" and "Front Wide" are automatically set to "None".

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Speaker Config. (Continued)	**Surr. Back** : Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • **None** : Select when the surround back speakers are not connected. • **2spkrs** : Use two surround back speakers. • **1spkr** : Use only one surround back speaker. When you select this setting, connect the surround back speaker to the left (L) channel.
	Front Height : Set the presence and size of the front height speakers. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • **None** : Select when the front height speakers are not connected.
	Front Wide : Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers. • **Large** : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • **Small** : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • **None** : Select when the front height speakers are not connected.
Bass Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.	**Subwoofer Mode** : Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer. • **LFE** : The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. • **LFE+Main** : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. • "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" (☞page 127) is set to "Yes". • Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass. • Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer. **NOTE** If "Front" and "Center" for "Speaker Config." are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode.
	LPF for LFE : Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency of the subwoofer. • **80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz**

Setting items	Setting details
Distances Set distance from listening position to speakers. Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.	**Unit** : Set the unit of distance. • **Feet / Meters**
	Step : Set the minimum variable width of the distance. • **1ft / 0.1ft** • **0.1m / 0.01m**
	Set Defaults : The "Distances" settings are returned to the default settings. • **Yes** : Reset to the defaults. • **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. When you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**. 
	Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Center / Subwoofer / Surround L / Surround R / Surr. Back L* / Surr. Back R* / F. Wide L / F. Wide R : Select speaker for distance setting. * When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" setting (☞page 128) is set to "1spkr", "Surr. Back" is displayed. • **0.0ft – 60.0ft / 0.00m – 18.00m** : Set the distance. • The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the "Speaker Config." (☞page 127) settings. • Default settings : Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Center / Subwoofer / Front Wide L / Front Wide R : 12.0 ft (3.60 m) Surround L / Surround R / Surr. Back L / Surr. Back R : 10.0 ft (3.00 m) • Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m). **NOTE** Speakers set to "None" in "Speaker Config." (☞page 127) are not displayed.

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Levels Set the volume of the test tone to be the same when it is output from each speaker.	**Test Tone Start** : Output test tone. • **Front L** / **F. Height L** / **Center** / **F. Height R** / **Front R** / **F. Wide R** / **Surround R** / **Surr. Back R*** / **Surr. Back L*** / **Surround L** / **F. Wide L** / **Subwoofer** : Select speaker to output test tone. * When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" setting (☞page 128) is set to "1spkr", "Surr. Back" is displayed. • **–12.0dB – +12.0dB (0.0dB)** : Adjust the volume. When "Levels" is adjusted, the adjusted values are set for all the sound modes. **NOTE** • Speakers set to "None" in the "Speaker Config." (☞page 127) settings are not displayed. • When a headphones jack is inserted in the PHONES jack of this unit, the "Levels" is not displayed.
	Set Defaults : The "Levels" settings are returned to the default settings. • **Yes** : Reset to the defaults. • **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. When you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**. 

Setting items	Setting details

Crossovers
Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer. Set the Crossover Frequency to suit the bass reproduction capability of the speaker being used.
	Crossover : Set the crossover frequency.
	• **40Hz** / **60Hz** / **80Hz** / **90Hz** / **100Hz** / **110Hz** / **120Hz** / **150Hz** / **200Hz** / **250Hz** / **Individual** : Set the crossover frequency for all speakers. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.
	The following settings can be set when the "Crossover" setting is set to "Individual".
	• **Front** / **Center** / **Surround** / **Surr. Back** / **Front Height** : Select speaker for setting of crossover frequency.
	• **40Hz** / **60Hz** / **80Hz** / **90Hz** / **100Hz** / **110Hz** / **120Hz** / **150Hz** / **200Hz** / **250Hz** : Set the crossover frequency.
	• "Crossovers" can be set when the "Bass" – "Subwoofer Mode" (☞page 128) setting is "LFE+Main", or when you have a speaker that is set to "Small".
	• Always set the crossover frequency to "80Hz". When using small speakers, however, we recommend setting the crossover frequency to a higher frequency.
	• For speakers set to "Small", sound below the crossover frequency is cut from the sound output. The cut bass sound is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
	• The speakers that can be set when "Individual" is selected differ depending on to the "Subwoofer Mode" setting (☞page 128).
	  • When "LFE" is selected, speakers set to "Small" at "Speaker Config." can be set. If the speakers are set to "Large", "Full Band" is displayed and the setting cannot be made.
	  • If set to "LFE+Main", this setting can be made regardless of the speaker size.

Network

GUI

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.
If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set "DHCP" to "On" (use the default setting). This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).
If you assign an IP address for each device, you must use the "IP Address" setting to assign an IP address to this unit and enter the information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask.

Menu operation

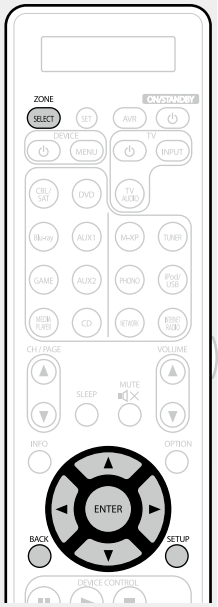
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".**

2 **Press SETUP.**
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.**

4 **Press ENTER or ▷ to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the "Network" procedure

Information (☞page 131)
IP Control (☞page 131)
Friendly Name (☞page 131)
Settings (☞page 132)
Maintenance Mode (☞page 133)

Information

Display network information.

Setting details
Friendly Name / DHCP=On or Off / IP Address / MAC Address

MAC Address is required to make a vTuner account.

IP Control

Default settings are underlined.

Set the network function on/off during standby.

Setting details
Off In Standby : Suspend network function during standby. **Always On** : Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.

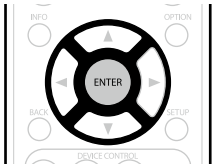
Set to "Always On" when using the web control function.

NOTE

When "IP Control" is set to "Always On", it consumes more standby power.

Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

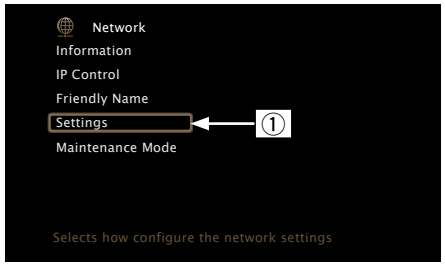
Setting items	Setting details
Edit Name Edits Friendly Name.	• The default Friendly Name on first use is "marantz AV7701". • Up to 63 characters can be input. • For character input, see page 107.
Set Defaults Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.	**Yes** : Reset to the defaults. **No** : Do not reset to the defaults. When you select "Set Defaults" and press **ENTER**, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press **ENTER**. 

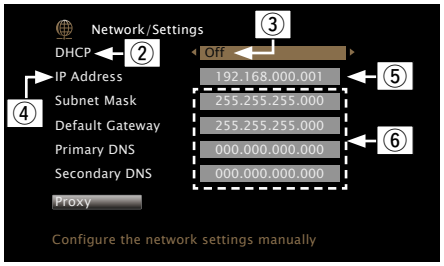
Settings

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for wired LAN.
Only set "Settings" when connecting to a network without a DHCP function.

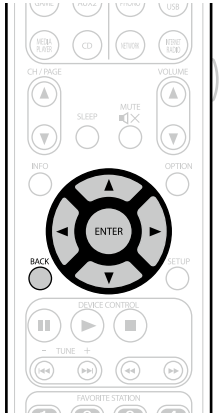
Setting details





① On the menu, select "Network" – "Settings" and press **ENTER**.
② Use △▽ to select "DHCP", then press **ENTER**.
③ Use ◁ ▷ to select "Off", then press **ENTER**.
④ Use △▽ to select "IP Address", then press **ENTER**.
- **IP Address** : Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.
  The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.
  CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 – 10.255.255.254
  CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 – 172.31.255.254
  CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 – 192.168.255.254

⑤ Use △▽◁ ▷ to input the address and press **ENTER**.
⑥ Use △▽ to select the setting item, then press **ENTER**.
- **Subnet Mask** : When connecting an xDSL modem or terminal adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.
- **Default Gateway** : When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.
- **Primary DNS, Secondary DNS** : If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at "Primary DNS". If two or more DNS are provided by your provider, enter both Pimary DNS and Secondary DNS.



The display returns to the original screen.
- When connecting to the network via a Proxy server, select "Proxy" and press **ENTER** (☞page 133 "Proxy settings").

Setting details

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), there is no need to make the settings at "IP Address" and "Proxy", since the DHCP function is set to "On" in this unit's default settings.
- If this unit is being used connected to a network without the DHCP function, the network settings must be made. In this case, some knowledge of networks is required. For details, consult a network administrator.
- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings (☞page 27).
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.
- When you want to cancel the setting during IP address input, press ◁ or **BACK**.

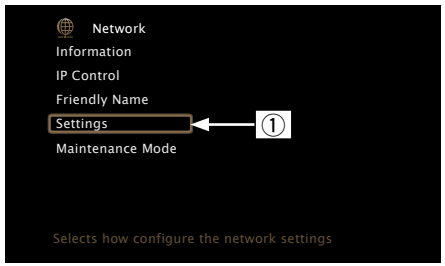
☞ See overleaf

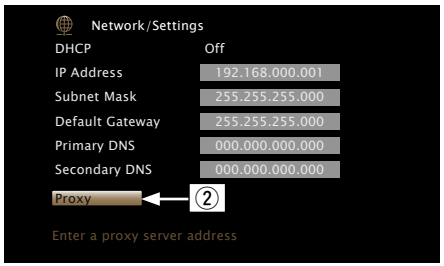
Setting details

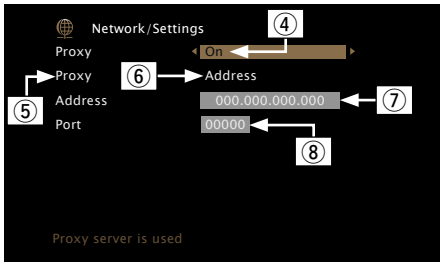
❑ **Proxy settings**

Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.

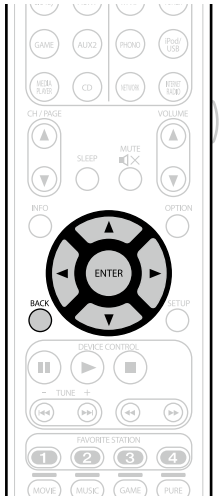
Make the proxy settings only when you connect to the Internet via a proxy server that is on your internal network or provided by your provider, etc.







① On the menu, select "Network" – "Settings" and press **ENTER**.
② Use △▽ to select "Proxy" and press **ENTER**.
③ Press **ENTER** again.
④ Use ◁ ▷ to select "On" and press **ENTER**.
⑤ Press ▽ to select "Proxy", then press **ENTER**.
⑥ Use ◁ ▷ to select "Address" or "Name", and then press **ENTER**.
Address : Select when inputting by address.
Name : Select when inputting by domain name.
⑦ Press ▽ to select "Address" or "Name", then press **ENTER**.
When "Address" is selected in step ⑥ : Use △▽◁ ▷ to enter the proxy server address, and press **ENTER**.
When"Name" is selected in step ⑥ : Use the software keyboard (☞page 107) to enter the domain name, and select OK.
• For character input, see page 107.
⑧ Press ▽ to select "Port", then press **ENTER**. Use △▽◁ ▷ to input the proxy server port number and press **ENTER**.
Setup is complete.
⑨ Press ◁ or **BACK**.
The display returns to the original screen.



Maintenance Mode

Use when receiving maintenance from a marantz service engineer or custom installer.

Setting details

NOTE

Only use this function if so instructed by a marantz serviceperson or installer.

General

GUI

Make various other settings.

Menu operation

1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch “MAIN”.**

2 **Press SETUP.**
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.**

4 **Press ENTER or ▷ to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press ◁ or **BACK**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

Items that can be set with the “General” procedure

- **Language** (☞page 135)
- **ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup** (☞page 135)
- **Zone Rename** (☞page 136)
- **Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2** (☞page 136)
- **Auto Standby** (☞page 136)
- **Front Display** (☞page 136)
- **Information** (☞page 137)
- **Firmware** (☞page 138)
- **Setup Lock** (☞page 139)

Language

Default settings are underlined.

Set the language for display on the menu screen.

Setting details
English / **Français** / **Español**

"Language" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.

1. Press and hold the main unit's **STATUS** and **ZONE SELECT** for at least 3 seconds.
   "V. Format : <NTSC>" appears on the display.
2. Press the main unit's △▽ and set "Lange. : <ENGLISH>".
3. Use the main unit's ◁ ▷ and set the language.
4. Press the main unit's **ENTER** to complete the setting.

ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Set the audio to play back with multi-zone (ZONE2, ZONE3).

NOTE

When HDMI ZONE2 function is used, these settings are not available.

Setting items	Setting details
Bass Adjust bass tones.	**–10dB – +10dB (0dB)**
Treble Adjust treble tones.	**–10dB – +10dB (0dB)**
High Pass Filter Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.	**On** : The low range is attenuated. **Off** : The low range is not attenuated.
Lch Level Adjust the left channel output level.	**–12dB – +12dB (0dB)**
Rch Level Adjust the right channel output level.	**–12dB – +12dB (0dB)**
Channel Set the signal output from multi-zone.	**Stereo** : Select stereo output. **Mono** : Select monaural output.
Volume Level Set the volume output level.	**Variable** : Volume adjustment is enabled by main unit and remote control unit. **40 (–40dB)** : Fix volume at –40 dB. Set when adjusting volume by external amplifier. **80 (0dB)** : Fix volume at 0 dB. Set when adjusting volume by external amplifier.
Volume Limit Make a setting for maximum volume.	**Off** : Do not set a maximum volume. **60 (–20dB)** / **70 (–10dB)** / **80 (0dB)** This is displayed from –79 dB to 18 dB when "Scale" (☞page 112) is set to "–79.5dB – 18.0dB".
Power On Volume Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.	**Last** : Use the memorized setting from the last session. **Mute** : Always mute when power is turned on. **1 – 98 (–79dB – 18dB)** : The volume is adjusted to the set level. This is displayed from –79 dB to 18 dB when "Scale" (☞page 112) is set to "–79.5dB – 18.0dB".
Mute Level Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.	**Full** : The sound is muted entirely. **–40dB** : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down. **–20dB** : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

Setting details

MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3
- Up to 10 characters can be input.
- For character input, see page 107.

Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2

Selects when to activate trigger out.
For details about how to connect the DC OUT jacks, see "DC OUT jacks" (☞page 91).

Setting details

❑ **When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3)**
Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to "On".

❑ **When setting for input source**
Activate trigger out when the input source set to "On" is selected.

Active for the zone set to "On" with "When setting for zone".

❑ **When setting for HDMI monitor**
Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to "On" is selected.

Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to "On" is selected. Active when the "MAIN ZONE" set to "On" with "When setting for zone" is selected, and when the input source set to "On" with "When setting for input source" is selected.

- **On** : Activate trigger on this mode.
- **– – –** : Do not activate trigger on this mode.

Auto Standby

Default settings are underlined.

When you do not perform any operation on this unit with no audio or video input for a specified time, this unit automatically enters the standby mode. Before it enters the standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the display of this unit and the menu screen.

Setting details

30min : The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
60min : The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
Off : The unit does not go into standby automatically.

Front Display

Default settings are underlined.

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

Setting items	Setting details
Display	**On** : Display is always on. **Auto OFF** : Display is off except when showing the status display. **Off** : Display is always off. This can also be set by pressing **DISPLAY** on the main unit. Each time **DISPLAY** is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below. On → Auto Off → Off **NOTE** When "Display" is set to "Off", the display turns off and appears as if there is no electricity.
Channel Indicator Sets whether to use the input signal display or output signal display for the channel indication on the display.	**Output** : Uses the output signal display for the channel indication on the display. **Input** : Uses the input signal display for the channel indication on the display.

Information

Show information about receiver settings, input signals, etc.

NOTE

This item is not compatible with the HDMI ZONE2 function.

Items	Setting details
Audio Show information about audio input signals.	**Sound Mode** : The currently set surround mode. **Input Signal** : The input signal type. **Format** : The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE). **Sample Rate** : The input signal's sampling frequency. **Offset** : The dialogue normalization correction value. **Flag** : This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with Dolby Digital EX and DTS-ES Matrix signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals. **Dialogue normalization function** This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources. The correction value can be checked using the **STATUS** on the main unit. Dial.Norm Offset - 4dB The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed.
Video Show information about HDMI input/output signals and monitor.	**Signal** • **Resolution** / **Color Space** / **Pixel Depth** **Monitor 1** / **Monitor 2** • **Interface** / **Resolutions**
ZONE Show information about current settings.	**MAIN ZONE** : This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source. • **ZONE Name** / **Select Source** / **Name** / **Sound Mode** / **Input Mode** / **Decode Mode** / **HDMI** / **Digital** / **Component** / **Video Select** / **Video Mode** / **Content Type** / **Video Conversion** / **i/p Scaler** / **Resolution** / **Progressive Mode** / **Aspect Ratio** etc. **ZONE2/3** : This item shows information about settings for ZONE2 or ZONE3. • **ZONE Name** / **Power** / **Select Source** / **Volume Level**
Firmware	**Version** : Displays information for the current firmware.

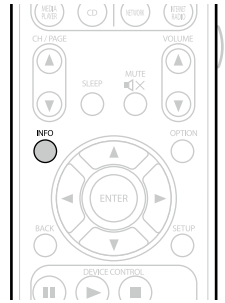
Press **INFO** to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.

Examples of screen display

• Status display screen

When the input source is switched.

When the volume is adjusted.



Status display: The operating status appears briefly on the screen when the input source is switched or the volume is changed.

NOTE

The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.

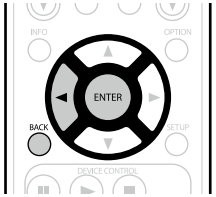
Firmware

Default settings are underlined.

Set whether or not to check for firmware update, update the firmware, and display update and upgrade notifications.

Setting items	Setting details
Update Update the firmware of the receiver. **NOTE** In cases where it is not possible to connect to the network after doing a firmware update, connect to the network again using "Network" (☞page 130).	**Check for Update** : Check for firmware updates. You can also check approximately how long it will take to complete an update. **Update Start** : Execute the update process. When updating starts, the STANDBY indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. The amount of update time which has elapsed is displayed. • If updating fails, the set automatically retries, but if updating is still not possible, one of the messages shown below is displayed. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again.

Display	Description
Updating fail	Updating failed.
Login failed	Failure to log into server.
Server is busy	Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.
Connection fail	Failure in connecting to server.
Download fail	Downloading of the firmware has failed.

Setting items	Setting details
Notifications Displays a notification message on this unit's menu screen when the latest firmware is released with "Update". Display a notification message on this unit's menu screen when downloadable firmware is released with "Add New Feature".	**Update** : The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (☞page 27) when using this function. • **On** : Display update message. • **Off** : Do not display update message. • When you press **ENTER** during display of the notification message, the "Check for Update" screen is displayed (Refer to page 138 for more information on "Update"). • Press ◁ or **BACK** to erase the notification message.  **Upgrade** : The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (☞page 27) when using this function. • **On** : Display upgrade message. • **Off** : Do not display upgrade message. • When you press **ENTER** during display of the notification message, the "Add New Feature" screen is displayed (Refer to page 139 for more information on "Add New Feature"). • Press ◁ or **BACK** to erase the notification message.

☞ See overleaf

Setting items	Setting details
Add New Feature Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade. **NOTE** In cases where it is not possible to connect to the network after adding a new function, connect to the network again using "Network" (☞page 130).	**Upgrade Package** : Display the items to be upgraded. **Upgrade Status** : Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade. **Upgrade Start** : Execute the upgrade process. When the upgrade starts, the STANDBY indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed. • If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in "Update" will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again. See the marantz website for details about upgrades. When the procedure is complete, "Registered" is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, "Not Registered" is displayed. The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure. The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit's **SETUP** and ◁ for at least 3 seconds.

Notes concerning use of "Update" and "Add New Feature"

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for a broadband Internet connection (☞page 27).
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Even with a broadband connection to the Internet, approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the ⏻ **ON/STANDBY** on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. "Update retry" appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.

- Information regarding the "Update" function and "Add New Feature" will be announced on the marantz web site each time related plans are defined.
- When usable new firmware is released with "Update" or "Add New Feature", a notification message is displayed on the menu screen. When you do not want to be notified, set "Notifications" – "Update" (☞page 138) and "Notifications" – "Upgrade" (☞page 138) to "Off".

Setup Lock

Default settings are underlined.

Protect settings from inadvertent change.

Setting items	Setting details
Lock	**On** : Turn protection on. **Off** : Turn protection off. When canceling the setting, set "Lock" to "Off". **NOTE** When "Lock" is set to "On", the settings listed below can no longer be changed. Also, "Setup Locked!" is displayed if you attempt to operate related settings. • Setup menu operations

Operating external devices with the remote control

By registering preset codes for external devices to the provided remote control, you can operate your TV and playback devices (such as Blu-ray Disc player and DVD player) with the remote control.

Registering preset codes

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.

❑ Buttons used for operating the devices

① **DEVICE ⏻**
For switching power of each device on or off.
② **△▽◁ ▷, ENTER, BACK**
For menu operation of each device.
③ **MENU, INFO, OPTION, SETUP**
For displaying the menu of each device.
④ **II, ►, ■, I◄◄, ►►I, ◄◄, ►►**
⑤ Number button (**0 – 9, +10**)
⑥ **CH/PAGE ▲▼**
⑦ **TV ⏻, TV INPUT**
For operating a TV
This button is enabled in any mode.

For details on operation with the remote control unit, see pages 41, 44, 53, 56, 60, 63, 66, 68, 70, 144, 145.

NOTE

The preset code cannot be registered to **M-XP**, **TUNER**, **PHONO**, **iPod/USB**, **NETWORK** and **INTERNET RADIO**.

Registering preset codes

The following two methods can be used for registering the reset code.
① Entering a 4-digit code
② Scanning the code table

❑ Entering a 4-digit code

See the preset code list table for the code to be input.

1 Press and hold the input source select buttons for the appliance to control, and press SET until ● indicator blinks twice.
The back light flashes.

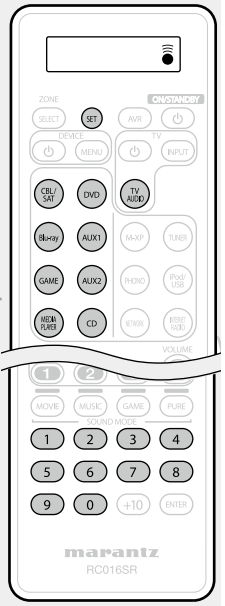
NOTE

Note that the group numbers that can be registered are predefined for each input source select button (☞page 142).

2 Press the 4-digit code for the appliance using 0 – 9 (code table at the end of this manual).
When the settings are complete, "OK" is shown in the remote control display.

NOTE

If "NG" is displayed in the remote control display, repeat steps 1 and 2, and enter the same code again.



❑ Scanning the code table

1 Switch the power on of the device for which you want to set the preset code.

2 Press and hold the input source select buttons for the appliance to control, and press SET until ● indicator blinks twice.
The back light flashes.

3 Aim the remote control at the appliance and slowly alternate between pressing CH/PAGE ▲ and DEVICE ⏻ for the appliance.
The preset code is shown in the remote control display.

4 Stop when the appliance turns off.

5 Press ENTER once to lock in the code.

- Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- If the AV device is not a marantz device, or if the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the marantz remote control included with this device.

NOTE

Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

Check the registered preset code

1 **Press and hold the input source select buttons for the appliance to control, and press SET until ● indicator blinks twice.**
The back light flashes.

2 **Press INFO.**
The ● indicator blinks twice, after which the set code is shown for 3 seconds in the remote control display.

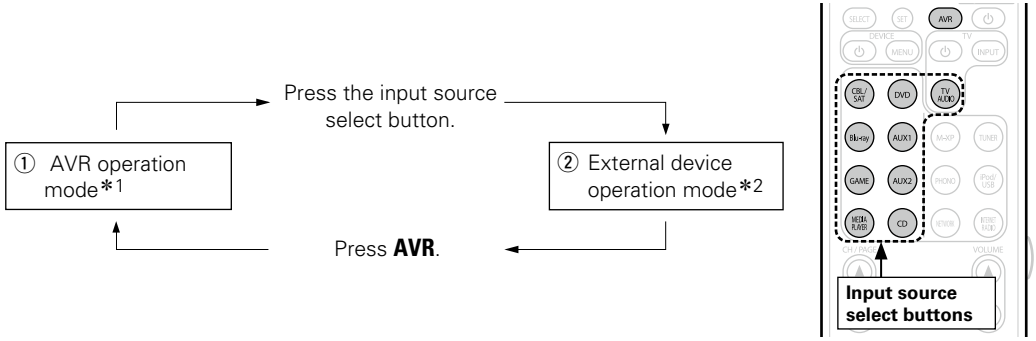
❑ Remote control operation modes

By default, the input source select buttons on the remote control perform only the input source select operation. To operate an external device with this remote control, set the preset code in "List of preset codes" (☞page 177) for the device you want to register to each input source select button.
For how to set preset codes to buttons, see "Registering preset codes" (☞page 140).

If you register preset codes on this remote control, the input source select buttons on the remote control can perform the following two functions.

① The function to switch input sources on this unit (AVR operation mode)
② The function to make this remote control switch to the mode in which you can operate the device registered to the button (External device operation mode)

❑ How to switch operation modes



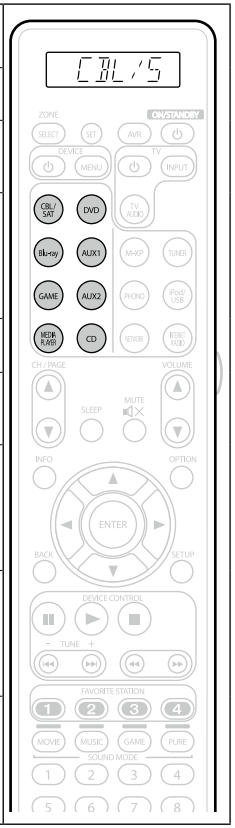
*1 The mode in which you can operate this unit.
*2 If you press one of these buttons , the input source on this unit changes and the remote control switches to the mode in which you can operate the external device registered to that button.

❑ Devices that can be registered to input source select buttons on the remote control

The types of devices that can be registered to each input source select button on this remote control are assigned as shown in the following table. Register the preset code under the desired device name in "List of preset codes" (☞page 177).

Preset codes that can be registered to CBL/SAT, Blu-ray, GAME, MEDIA PLAYER, DVD, AUX1, AUX2, and CD buttons

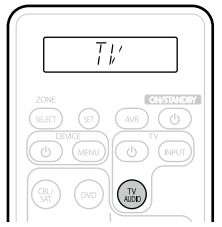
Button	Default preset mode	Available change to preset
CBL/SAT	AVR	CBL/SAT group
Blu-ray		BD group DVD group
GAME		CBL/SAT group BD group DVD group CD group
MEDIA PLAYER		CBL/SAT group
DVD		BD group DVD group
AUX1		CBL/SAT group BD group DVD group CD group
AUX2		CBL/SAT group BD group DVD group CD group
CD		CD group



- To unregister the device from a button and reset to the default setting, set the AVR code "0000" to the button.

Preset codes that can be registered to TV buttons

Button	Default preset mode	Available change to preset
TV AUDIO	AVR	TV group



- When you press TV AUDIO that has a preset code registered to it, the "TV" indication on the remote control lights.

To perform menu operations of this unit, press **AVR** to have the remote control enter the AVR operation mode.

Operating external devices

Press the input source select button (☞page 36).

• The operation mode of the remote control unit is switched as shown in the table.

Input source select button	Input source of this unit	Operation mode Devices controllable with the remote control unit
AVR	–	This unit (AVR-operation) *2
CBL/SAT *1	CBL/SAT	Device registered on the **CBL/SAT** button
Blu-ray *1	Blu-ray	Device registered on the **Blu-ray** button
GAME *1	GAME	Device registered on the **GAME** button
MEDIA PLAYER *1	MEDIA PLAYER	Device registered on the **MEDIA PLAYER** button
DVD *1	DVD	Device registered on the **DVD** button
AUX1 *1	AUX1	Device registered on the **AUX1** button
AUX2 *1	AUX2	Device registered on the **AUX2** button
CD *1	CD	Device registered on the **CD** button
TV AUDIO *1	TV AUDIO	Device registered on the **TV AUDIO** button

*1 If a preset code is registered for this button, the remote control unit of this unit can control another devices.

*2 With this mode, you can operate: HD Radio, iPod, USB memory device, turn table and network function.

When the **FAVORITE STATION** is pressed, the AVR-operation mode starts automatically.

NOTE

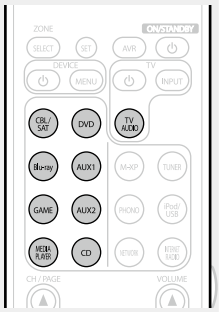
If the mode of the remote control unit is set to other than AVR-operation mode, press **AVR** to switch the remote control unit to the AVR-operation mode to perform the following operations:

• For menu operation by pressing **SETUP**.

Operating external devices

The supplied remote control unit can control a device other than this unit.

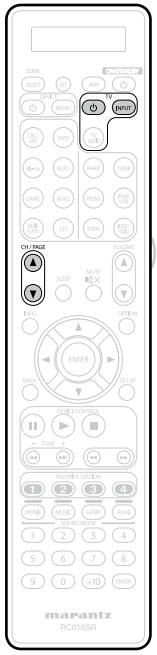
1 **Press the input source select button to which the preset code for the device you want to operate has been registered (☞page 143).**



2 **Operate the device.**

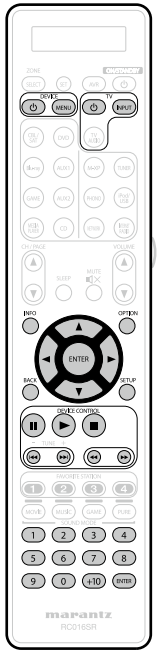
- For details, refer to the device's operating instructions.

❑ TV group (1＊＊＊＊) (TV) operation



Operation buttons	Function
TV ⏻	TV power on/standby
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)

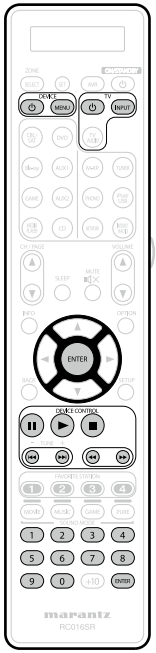
❑ DVD group (2＊＊＊) (DVD player / DVD recorder) operation



Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/standby
DEVICE MENU	Menu
TV ⏻	TV power on/standby
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△▽◁▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
❚❚	Pause
►	Playback
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Auto search (cue)
◄◄ ►►	Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

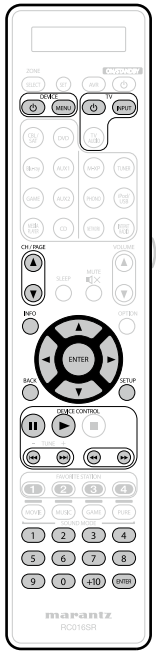
☞ See overleaf

❑ CD group (3∗∗∗) (CD player / CD recorder) operation



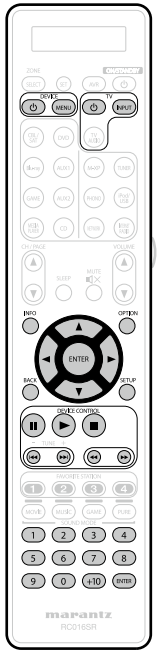
Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
TV ⏻	TV power on/standby
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
ENTER	Enter
⏸	Pause
▶	Playback
■	Stop
I◀◀ ▶▶I	Auto search (cue)
◀◀ ▶▶	Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)
0 – 9	Track selection

❑ CBL/SAT group (4∗∗∗) (Set top box for satellite (SAT) / cable (CBL) / Media player) operation



Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/standby
DEVICE MENU	Menu
TV ⏻	TV power on/standby
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
⏸	Pause
▶	Playback
I◀◀ ▶▶I	Auto search (cue)
◀◀ ▶▶	Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection

❑ BD group (5∗∗∗) (Blu-ray Disc player) operation



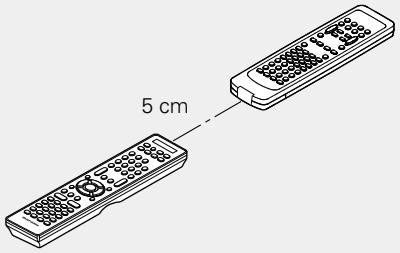
Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/standby
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
TV ⏻	TV power on/standby
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△▽◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Return
SETUP	Setup
⏸	Pause
▶	Playback
■	Stop
I◀◀ ▶▶I	Auto search (cue)
◀◀ ▶▶	Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

Operating learn function

- If the AV device is not a marantz device, or if the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the marantz remote control included with this device.
- This remote control unit is capable of learning around 160 codes.

Remembering remote control codes from other devices

1 Place the marantz remote control and remote control from the other device approximately 5 cm apart, with the remote control signal transmission sections facing each other.



2 Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.

3 Press input source select buttons to select the input source.
The input source is shown in the remote control display.

NOTE

Before using the learning function, register a preset code (☞page 140 "Registering preset codes") for a mode other than AVR preset (☞page 142) to each input source switch button.

4 Select the button to be learned.
LEARN indicator lights up.

5 Press and hold the button that you want to register on the other remote control until "OK" is displayed on the marantz remote control display.

- If "NG" is shown on the remote control display, perform step 5 again. If "NG" is shown again on the remote control display, the remote control may not be able to learn the code correctly. In this case, use the specialized remote control for the device.
- If the remote control memory becomes full, "FULL" is shown on the remote control display. If you want to learn the code, you should erase other learned button.

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to learn other buttons for the same input source.

7 Repeat steps 3 to 6 to learn other input sources.

8 When programming of the remote control unit is completed, press SET.
The LEARN indicator turns off, and the remote control unit exits learn mode.

- There are some remote control units that cannot be programmed, or even if they can be programmed, they may not operate correctly. If this happens, use the remote control unit supplied with the AV equipment to operate it.
- The operations of the programmed buttons override the preset memory. If you do not require the programmed buttons, erase the stored remote control codes to return to the initial settings (☞page 147 "Delete saved remote control codes").
- The number of buttons that can be stored varies depending on the remote control unit used. If you have stored the maximum number of buttons allowed for the remote control unit, "FULL" appears on its display.

NOTE

- The learning function is unavailable for all **ZONE SELECT**, **SET**, **AVR**, **ON/STANDBY** ⏻, **VOLUME** ▲▼, **FAVORITE STATION**, **SOUND MODE** and input source select buttons in any mode.
- While in the AVR operation mode, the learning function is unavailable.
- The learning procedure does not operate correctly if the batteries have become worn.
- If no buttons are pressed for approximately 1 minutes while in the LEARN mode, the remote control unit automatically exits from the LEARN mode.

Delete saved remote control codes

Codes can be erased in three ways: by buttons, sources, and by all memory contents.

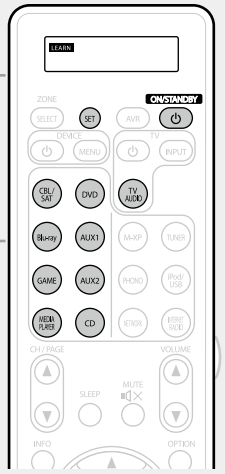
❑ Delete remote control codes for each button

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press input source select buttons to select the input source you want to delete.**
The input source is shown in the remote control display.

3 **Press and hold ON/STANDBY ⏻ and press the learned button to be erased twice.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display, and the mode returns to LEARN mode.

- To return the normal mode, press **SET**.



❑ Delete remote control codes for each input source

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press and hold ON/STANDBY ⏻ and press the learned input source select buttons to be erased twice.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display.

3 **Press ENTER to continue erasing.**
The indicator blinks twice and the mode returns to LEARN mode.

- To cancel the erasing operation, do not press **ENTER**, and simply press any other button.
- To return the normal mode, press **SET**.

❑ Delete remote control codes for all input sources

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press and hold ON/STANDBY ⏻ and press AVR .**
LEARN indicator lights.

3 **Press ENTER to continue erasing.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display, and the mode returns to LEARN mode.

- To cancel the erasing operation, do not press **ENTER**, and simply press any other button.
- To return the normal mode, press **SET**.

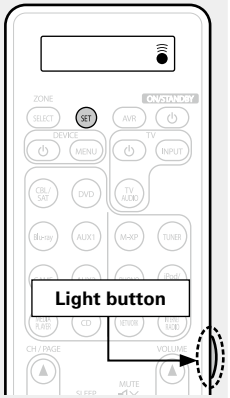
Setting the back light

Press the Light button on the side of the remote control, and the buttons on the remote control light for 2 seconds. If the Light button is pressed while the buttons are lit, the buttons remain lit for another 2 seconds.

• Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

Disabling the backlight

Press and hold both SET and Light button until indicator flashes twice.



Turning the backlight on

Press and hold both SET and Light button until indicator flashes twice.

Specifying the zone used with the main remote control unit

When the **ZONE SELECT** button is pressed, only the set zone can be operated with the remote control unit.

• The factory setting is "M23".

1 Press and hold ZONE SELECT and SET for at least 3 seconds.

2 Use △▽ to set the zone to be used and press ENTER.

"SET" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Zone to be used
M	MAIN ZONE only
M2	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2
M23	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3

Informations

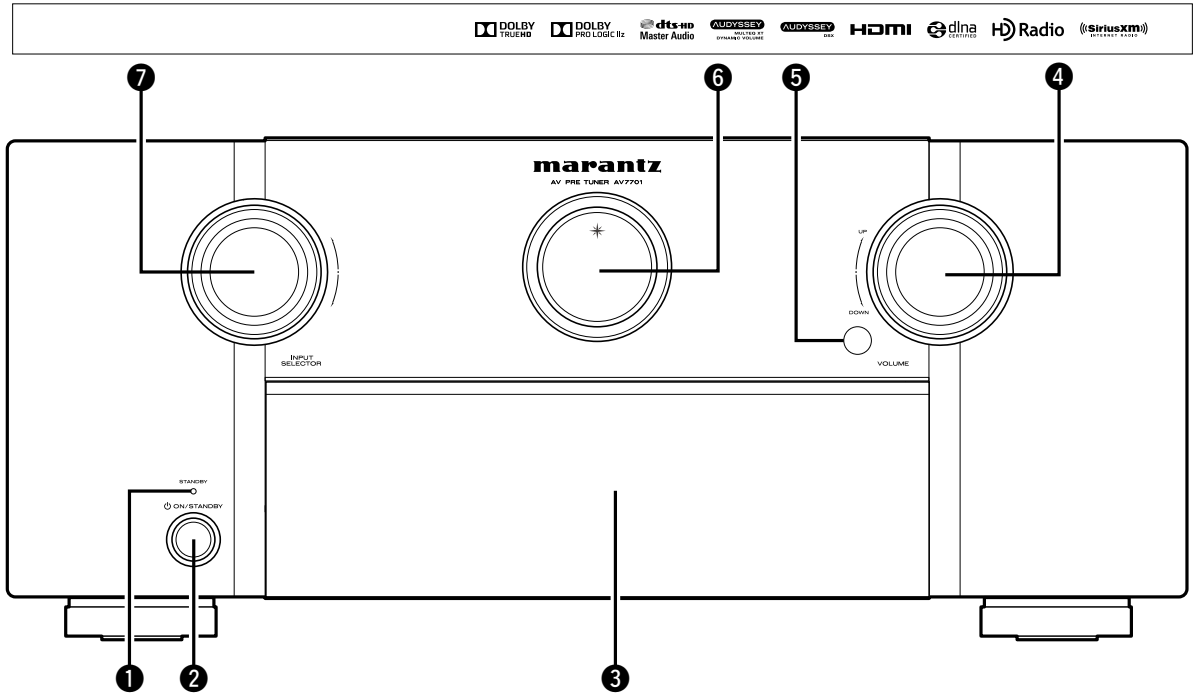
Here, we list various information related to this unit.
Please refer to this information as needed.

- Part names and functions ☞page 150
- Other information ☞page 157
- Troubleshooting ☞page 169
- Specifications ☞page 174
- Index ☞page 175

Part names and functions

Front panel

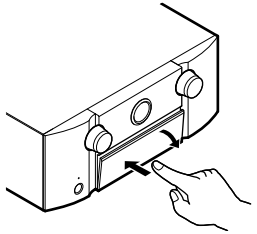
For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ( ).



❶ **STANDBY indicator** ..... (36)
[STANDBY indicator status]
- Power on : Off
- Normal standby : Red
- When "HDMI Control" (☞page 117) is set to "On" : Orange
- When "IP Control" (☞page 131) is set to "Always On" : Orange

❷ **Power operation button (⏻ ON/STANDBY)** ..... (36)
Turns power to this unit on and off (standby).

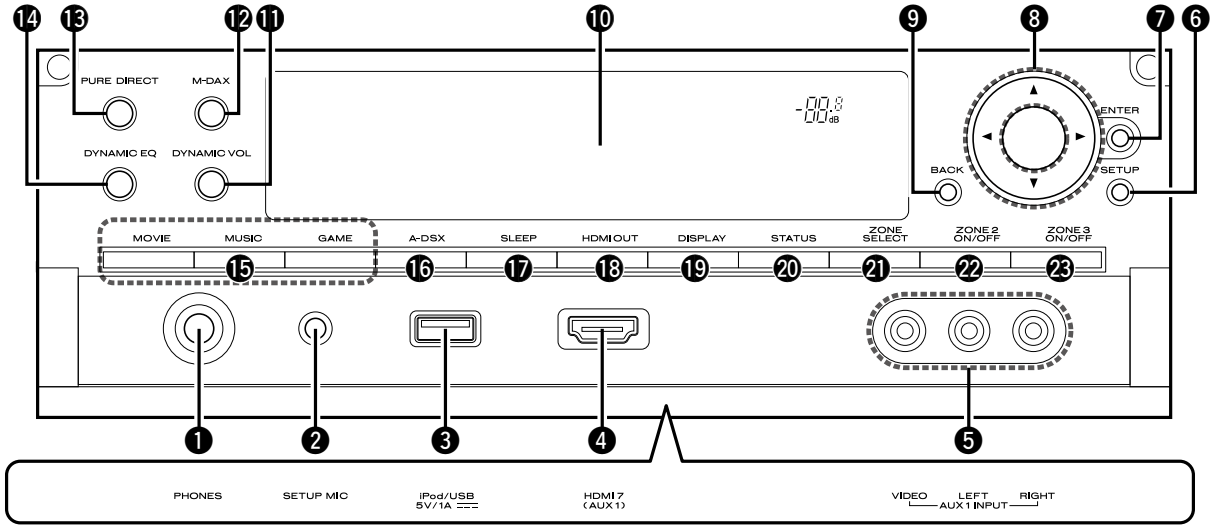
❸ **Door**
When you are using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. When not using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, close it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.



❹ **VOLUME knob** ..... (37, 102)
❺ **Remote control sensor** ..... (156)
❻ **Main display** ..... (152)
❼ **INPUT SELECTOR knob** ..... (36, 173)

With the door open

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ( ).



❶ Headphones jack (PHONES)
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the PRE OUT terminals.

NOTE

To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

❷ SETUP MIC jack ..... (31, 88)
❸ iPod/USB port ..... (20)
❹ HDMI7 (AUX1) connector ..... (11)
❺ AUX1 INPUT connectors ..... (18)
❻ SETUP button ..... (108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)
❼ ENTER button ..... (106, 108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)
❽ Cursor buttons (△▽◁ ▷) ..... (106, 108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)
❾ BACK button ..... (43, 55, 59, 62, 67, 70)
❿ Sub display ..... (152)
⓫ Dynamic Volume button (DYNAMIC VOL) ..... (113)
⓬ M-DAX button/indicator ..... (111)
⓭ PURE DIRECT button/indicator ..... (77)
⓮ DYNAMIC EQ button ..... (113)
⓯ SOUND MODE buttons ..... (77)
- MOVIE button
- MUSIC button
- GAME button

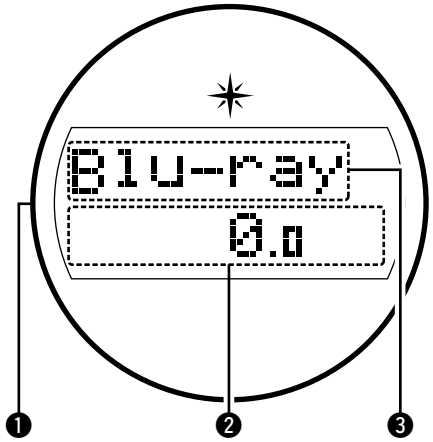
⓰ Audyssey DSX® button (A-DSX) ..... (113)
⓱ SLEEP button (SLEEP) ..... (94, 102)
⓲ HDMI OUT button ..... (117)
⓳ DISPLAY button ..... (136)
⓴ STATUS button ..... (40, 55, 59, 70, 137)
㉑ ZONE SELECT button ..... (102)
㉒ ZONE2 ON/OFF button ..... (102)
㉓ ZONE3 ON/OFF button ..... (102)

Display

Main Display

The input source name, surround mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

❑ Standard display



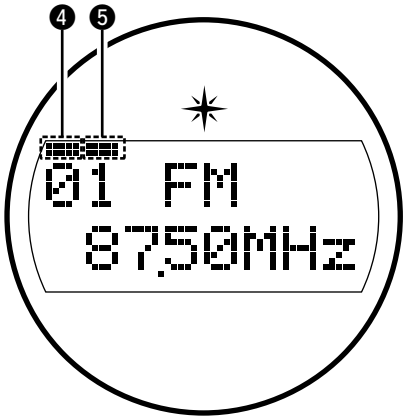
❶ **Light illumination**
When the power to this device is switched on, the surrounding area is lit blue. The settings can be changed so the light does not switch on (☞page 99 "Switches light illumination on/off").

❷ **Master volume indicator**

❸ **Input source indicator**
The currently selected input source name is displayed.
If the input source name has been changed using "Source Rename" (☞page 123) in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed.

❑ Tuner display

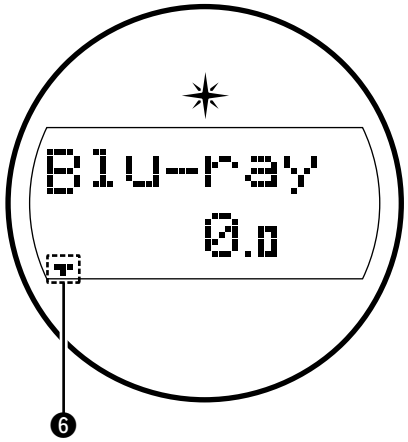
These light according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "HD Radio".



❹ Lights up when the broadcast is properly turned in.

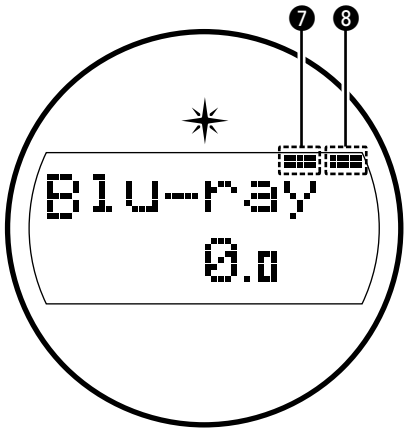
❺ In the FM mode, this lights up when receiving stereo broadcasts.

❑ Sleep timer display



❻ This lights when the sleep mode is selected (☞page 94).

❑ ZONE2/ZONE3 power on display

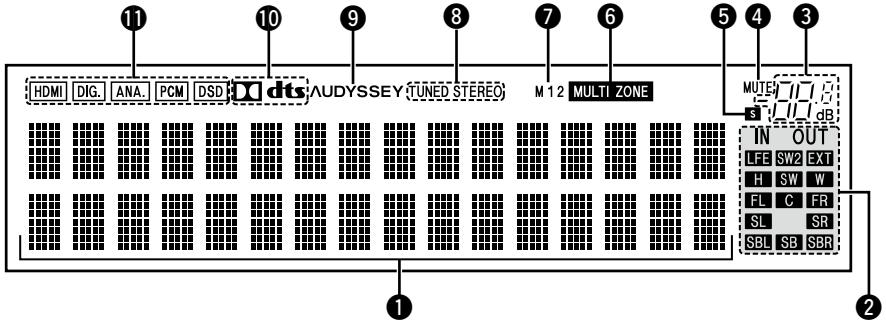


❼ This lights up when ZONE2 (separate room) power is turned on (☞page 100).

❽ This lights up when ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on (☞page 100).

☞ See overleaf

Sub Display



❶ Information display
The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

❷ Output signal channel indicators
Lights when audio signals are being output from the PRE OUT terminals.

❸ Master volume indicator

❹ MUTE indicator
This lights when the mute mode is selected (☞page 37).

❺ Sleep timer indicator
This lights when the sleep mode is selected (☞page 94, 102).

❻ MULTI ZONE indicators
This lights up when ZONE2, ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on (☞page 102).

❼ Monitor output indicator
These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.
When set to "Auto (Dual)", the indicators light according to connection status.

❽ Tuner reception mode indicators
These light according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "HD Radio".
STEREO : In FM mode, this lights up when receiving analog stereo broadcasts.
TUNED : Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

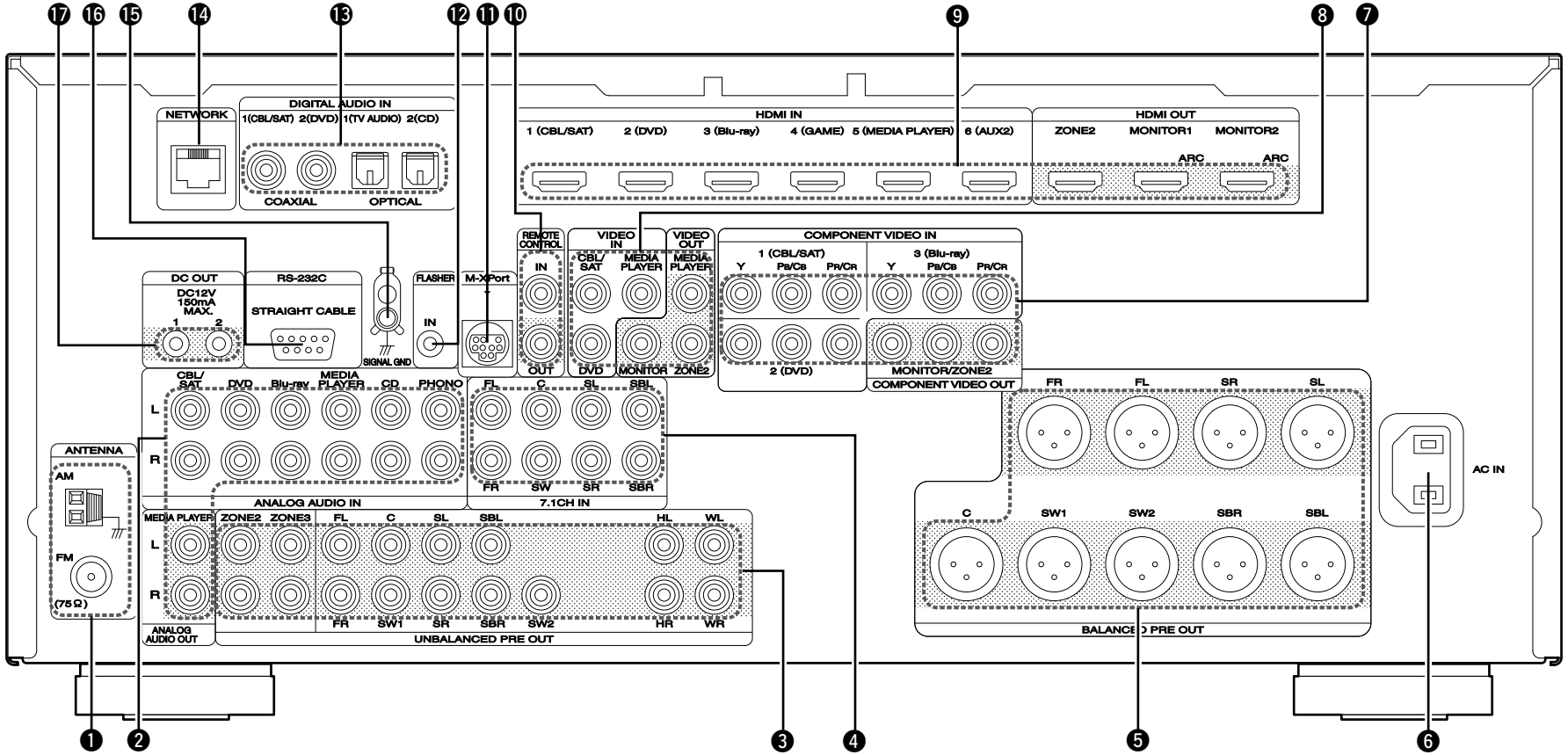
❾ Audyssey® indicator
This indicator lights when the "MultEQ® XT" (☞page 112), "Dynamic EQ" (☞page 113), or "Dynamic Volume" (☞page 113) setting is set to "On".

❿ Decoder indicator
These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

⓫ Input mode indicators
Set the audio input modes for the different input sources (☞page 124).

Rear panel

See the page indicated in parentheses ( ).



❶ **FM/AM antenna terminal (ANTENNA)** ..... (23)

❷ **Analog audio connectors (ANALOG AUDIO IN/ANALOG AUDIO OUT)** ..... (15, 16, 17, 19, 21, 22)

❸ **UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminals** ..... (26)

❹ **7.1ch input connectors (7.1CH IN)** ..... (25)

❺ **BALANCED PRE OUT terminals** ..... (26)

❻ **AC inlet (AC IN)** ..... (28)

❼ **Component video connectors (COMPONENT VIDEO IN/COMPONENT VIDEO OUT)** ..... (14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19)

❽ **Video connectors (VIDEO IN/VIDEO OUT)** ..... (14, 15, 16, 19)

❾ **HDMI connectors** ..... (10, 11)

❿ **REMOTE CONTROL connectors** ..... (90)

⓫ **M-XPort connector** ..... (24)

⓬ **FLASHER IN jack**
Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.

⓭ **Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO IN)** ..... (14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 21)

⓮ **Network connector (NETWORK)** ..... (27)

⓯ **SIGNAL GND terminal** ..... (22)

⓰ **RS-232C connector** ..... (91)

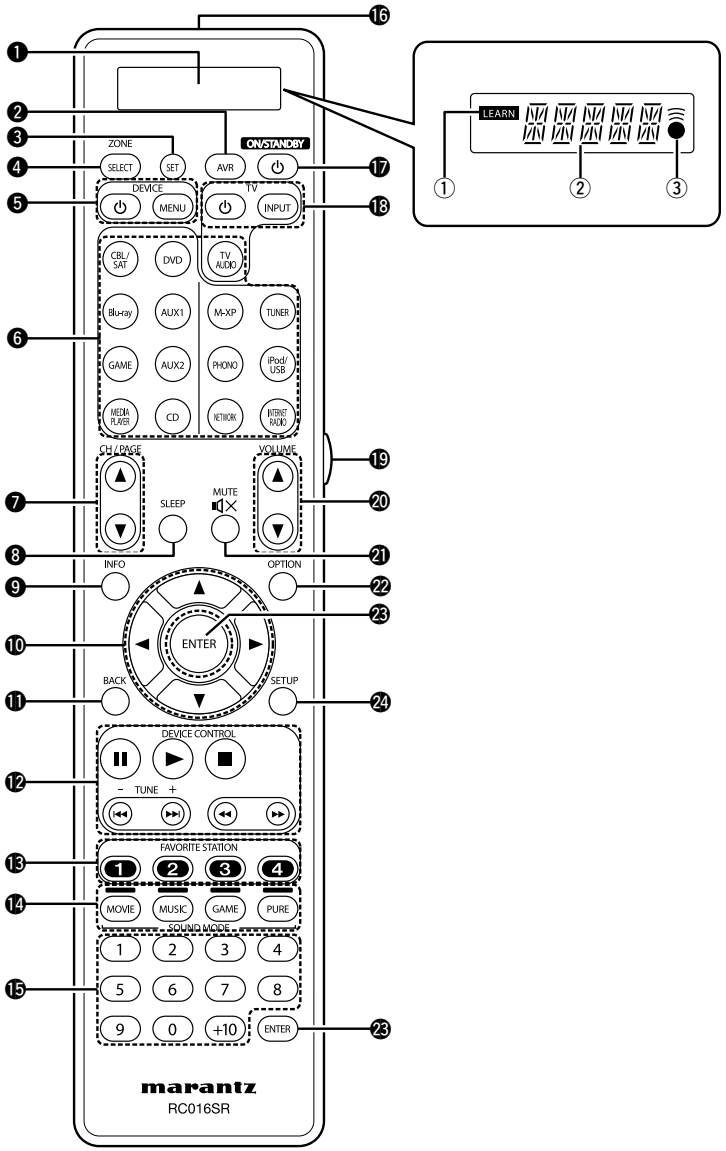
⓱ **DC OUT jacks** ..... (91)

NOTE

Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

Remote control unit

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ( ).



❶ **Display**
① LEARN indicator
② Information display
③ indicator

❷ **AVR button** (141, 143)

❸ **SET button** (140, 146, 148)

❹ **ZONE SELECT button** (30, 102)

❺ **Device operation buttons (DEVICE ⏻ / DEVICE MENU)** (144, 145)

❻ **Input source select buttons** (36, 102)

❼ **Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ▲▼)** (41, 44, 53, 56, 60, 63, 66, 68, 70)

❽ **SLEEP button** (94, 102)

❾ **Information button (INFO)** (137)

❿ **Cursor buttons (△▽◁ ▷)** (106, 108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)

⓫ **BACK button** (43, 55, 59, 62, 67, 70)

⓬ **DEVICE CONTROL buttons** (41, 44, 60, 66, 70)
- Pause button (❚❚)
- Play button (►)
- Stop button (■)
- Skip buttons (I◄◄, ►►I)
- Search buttons (◄◄, ►►)

Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, –) (46, 47)

⓭ **FAVORITE STATION buttons (1 – 4)** (73)

⓮ **SOUND MODE buttons** (77)
- MOVIE button
- MUSIC button
- GAME button
- PURE button

⓯ **Number buttons** (48, 50, 140, 144, 145)

⓰ **Remote control signal transmitter** (156)

⓱ **ON/STANDBY button (⏻)** (36)

⓲ **TV operation buttons (TV ⏻ / INPUT)** (144, 145)

⓳ **Light button** (148)

⓴ **VOLUME buttons (▲▼)** (37, 102)

㉑ **MUTE button (🔇)** (37, 102)

㉒ **OPTION button** (39, 43, 46, 55, 60, 62, 70)

㉓ **ENTER button** (106, 108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)

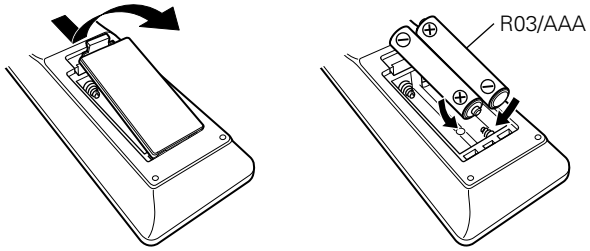
㉔ **SETUP button** (108, 115, 121, 126, 130, 134)

See overleaf

Inserting the batteries

① Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.

② Load the two batteries properly as indicated by the marks in the battery compartment.



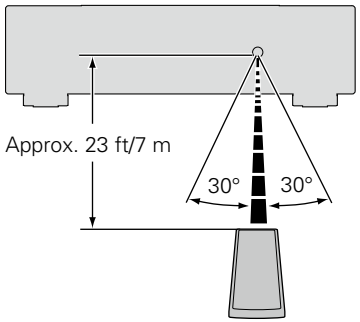
③ Put the rear cover back on.

NOTE

- Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation. Replace them with new batteries at an early date.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the ⊕ and ⊖ marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
  - Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
  - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
  - Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- The remote control unit may function improperly if rechargeable batteries are used.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



NOTE

- The set may function improperly or the remote control unit may not operate if the remote control sensor is exposed to direct sunlight, strong artificial light from an inverter type fluorescent lamp or infrared light.
- When using 3D video devices that transmit radio communication signals (such as infrared signals etc) between the various units (such as the monitor, 3D glasses, 3D transmitter unit etc), the remote control unit may not operate due to interference from those radio communication signals. If this occurs, adjust the direction and distance of the 3D communication for each unit, and check that the remote control unit operation is not affected by these signals.

Other information

- ❑ **Trademark information** (☞page 157)
- ❑ **Surround** (☞page 158)
- ❑ **Relationship between video signals and monitor output** (☞page 164)
- ❑ **Explanation of terms** (☞page 166)

Trademark information

This product uses the following technologies (Random order):

AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT DYNAMIC VOLUME
AUDYSSEY DSX

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey DSX® are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.

DOLBY TRUEHD
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

dts-HD Master Audio

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Nos: 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending.
DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS-HD and the Symbol together are registered trademarks & DTS-HD Master Audio is a trademark of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

HDMI

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Made for iPod iPhone
AirPlay

"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
AirPlay, the AirPlay logo, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.

Plays Windows Media™

Windows Media and the Windows logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

Surround

This unit is equipped with a digital signal processing circuit that lets you play program sources in the sound mode to achieve the same sense of presence as in a movie theater.

Sound modes and surround parameters

This table shows the speakers that can be used in each sound mode and the surround parameters adjustable in each sound mode.

Symbols in the table

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of "Speaker Config." (☞page 127).

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	Channel output						
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround back L/R	Front height L/R	Front wide L/R	Subwoofer
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)*1	○						◎*2
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)*1	○	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
STEREO	○						◎
MULTI CH IN	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz	○	◎	◎		◎		◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	○	◎	◎	◎			◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II	○	◎	◎				◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC	○	◎	◎				◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II A-DSX	○	◎	◎		◎*5	◎*6	◎
DOLBY PRO LOGIC A-DSX	○	◎	◎		◎*5	◎*6	◎
DTS NEO:6	○	◎	◎	◎			◎
DTS NEO:6 A-DSX	○	◎	◎		◎*5	◎*6	◎
Audyssey DSX®	○	◎	◎		◎*5	◎*6	◎
DOLBY DIGITAL	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DOLBY TrueHD	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DTS SURROUND	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DTS 96/24	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DTS-HD	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
DTS Express	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*4		◎
MULTI CH STEREO	○	◎	◎	◎*7	◎*8	◎*9	◎
VIRTUAL	○						◎

*1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.
*2 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (☞page 128), sound is output from the subwoofer.
*3 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
*4 Audio is output from the front height speaker when the set sound mode name contains "+PLIIz". For information on how to check the sound mode, see page 77.
*5 Audio is output from the front height speaker when "Audyssey DSX®" (☞page 113) is set to "On-Height-".
*6 Audio is output from the front wide speaker when "Audyssey DSX®" (☞page 113) is set to "On-Wide-".
*7 Audio is output from the surround back speaker when "Speaker Select" (☞page 110) is set to "S. Back".
*8 Audio is output from the front height speaker when "Speaker Select" (☞page 110) is set to "F. Height".
*9 Audio is output from the front wide speaker when "Speaker Select" (☞page 110) is set to "F. Wide".

☞ See overleaf

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	Surround Parameter (☞page 109)									
	Home Theater EQ ∗10 (☞page 109)	Loudness Management ∗11 (☞page 109)	Dynamic Compression ∗12 (☞page 109)	Low Frequency Effects ∗13 (☞page 109)	Height Gain ∗14 (☞page 110)	Speaker Select (☞page 110)	PRO LOGIC II/IIx Music mode only			NEO:6 Music mode only
							Panorama (☞page 109)	Dimension (☞page 109)	Center Width (☞page 110)	Center Image (☞page 109)
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)∗1		○	○							
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)∗1		○	○	○						
STEREO		○	○	○						
MULTI CH IN	○∗15			○	○					
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz	○	○	○		○					
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	○∗16	○	○				○	○	○	
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II	○∗17	○	○				○	○	○	
DOLBY PRO LOGIC	○∗17	○	○							
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II A-DSX	○∗17	○	○				○	○	○	
DOLBY PRO LOGIC A-DSX	○∗17	○	○				○	○	○	
DTS NEO:6	○∗16	○	○							○
DTS NEO:6 A-DSX	○∗16	○	○							○
Audyssey DSX®	○	○	○	○						
DOLBY DIGITAL	○∗15		○	○	○					
DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	○∗15		○	○	○					
DOLBY TrueHD	○∗15	○	○	○	○					
DTS SURROUND	○∗15		○	○	○					
DTS 96/24	○∗15			○	○					
DTS-HD	○∗15			○	○					
DTS Express	○∗15			○	○					
MULTI CH STEREO		○	○	○		○				
VIRTUAL		○	○	○						

∗1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.
∗10 This item cannot be selected during DSD (SA-CD signal playback.
∗11 This item can be selected when a Dolby TrueHD signal is played.
∗12 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is played.
∗13 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
∗14 This setting is available when the set sound mode name contains "+PLIIz". For information on how to check the sound mode, see page 77.
∗15 This setting is unavailable when the set sound mode name contains "+PLIIx Music". For information on how to check the sound mode, see page 77.
∗16 This setting is possible when the sound mode is "PLIIx Movie" or "DTS NEO:6 Cinema".
∗17 This setting is possible when the sound mode is "PLII Movie".

☞ See overleaf

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	Subwoofer (☞page 111)	Tone ∗18 (☞page 110)	Audyssey (☞page 112)				M-DAX ∗21 (☞page 111)
			MultEQ® XT ∗19 (☞page 112)	Dynamic EQ ∗20 (☞page 113)	Dynamic Volume ∗20 (☞page 113)	Audyssey DSX® ∗19 (☞page 113)	
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)∗1	○∗5						
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)∗1	○						
STEREO		○	○	○	○		○
MULTI CH IN	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz	○	○	○	○	○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II A-DSX	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC A-DSX	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS NEO:6	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS NEO:6 A-DSX	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Audyssey DSX®	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DOLBY DIGITAL	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DOLBY TrueHD	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS SURROUND	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS 96/24	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS-HD	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Express	○	○	○	○	○	○	
MULTI CH STEREO	○	○	○	○	○		○
VIRTUAL	○	○	○	○	○		○

∗1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.
∗5 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (☞page 128), sound is output from the subwoofer.
∗18 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" (☞page 113) is set to "On".
∗19 This item cannot be set for HD audio exceeding a frequency of 96kHz or during DSD(SA-CD) signal playback.
∗20 This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT" (☞page 112) is set to "Off" or "Graphic EQ".
∗21 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
∗22 In this sound mode, bass is +6 dB, and treble is +4 dB (Default).

❑ Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

This table shows the input signal that can be played in each sound mode. Check the audio signal of the input source then select the sound mode.

Symbols in the table

● This indicates the default sound mode.
○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	NOTE	Input signal types and formats																		
		ANALOG	PCM		DTS-HD		DTS					DOLBY		DOLBY DIGITAL				Super Audio CD	
			PCM (multi ch)	PCM (2ch)	DTS-HD Master Audio	DTS-HD High Resolution Audio	DTS EXPRESS	DTS ES DSCRT (With Flag)	DTS ES MTRX (With Flag)	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 96/24	DOLBY TrueHD	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1ch)	DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch)	DSD (multi ch)	DSD (2ch)
DTS SURROUND																				
DTS-HD MSTR	∗1				●															
DTS-HD HI RES	∗1					●														
DTS ES DSCRT6.1	∗2							●												
DTS ES MTRX6.1	∗2								●											
DTS SURROUND	∗1							○	○	●										
DTS 96/24	∗1										●									
DTS (–HD) + PLIIx MOVIE	∗3				○	○	○			○	○									
DTS (–HD) + PLIIx MUSIC	∗2				○	○	○			○	○									
DTS (–HD) + PLIIz	∗4				○	○	○	○	○	○	○									
DTS EXPRESS	∗1						●													
DTS (–HD) + NEO:6	∗2				○	○	○			○	○									
DTS NEO:6 CINEMA	∗1	○		○													○		○	
DTS NEO:6 MUSIC	∗1	○		○													○		○	
DTS NEO:6 CINEMA A-DSX		○		○													○			
DTS NEO:6 MUSIC A-DSX		○		○													○			
Audyssey DSX®					○	○	○	○	○	○	○									

∗1 If "Audyssey DSX®" (☞page 113) is set to "On", the Audyssey DSX® effect is added to the sound mode marked with ∗1.
∗2 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗3 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗4 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

☞ See overleaf

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	NOTE	Input signal types and formats																	
		ANALOG	PCM		DTS-HD		DTS					DOLBY		DOLBY DIGITAL				Super Audio CD	
			PCM (multi ch)	PCM (2ch)	DTS-HD Master Audio	DTS-HD High Resolution Audio	DTS EXPRESS	DTS ES DSCRT (With Flag)	DTS ES MTRX (With Flag)	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 96/24	DOLBY TrueHD	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1ch)	DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch)	DSD (multi ch)	DSD (2ch)
DOLBY SURROUND																			
DOLBY TrueHD	∗1											●							
DOLBY DIGITAL+	∗1												●						
DOLBY DIGITAL EX	∗2													○	○	○			
DOLBY (D+) (HD) +EX	∗2											○	○						
DOLBY DIGITAL	∗1													●	●	●			
DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx MOVIE	∗3											○	○	○	○	○			
DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx MUSIC	∗2											○	○	○	○	○			
DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIz	∗4											○	○	○	○	○			
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx MOVIE	∗2	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx MUSIC	∗2	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx GAME	∗2	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz	∗4	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MOVIE	∗1	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC	∗1	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME	∗1	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC	∗1	○		○													○		○
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MOVIE A-DSX		○		○													○		
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC A-DSX		○		○													○		
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME A-DSX		○		○													○		
DOLBY PRO LOGIC A-DSX		○		○													○		
Audyssey DSX®												○	○	○	○	○			

∗1 If "Audyssey DSX®" (☞page 113) is set to "On", the Audyssey DSX® effect is added to the sound mode marked with ∗1.
∗2 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗3 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗4 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

☞ See overleaf

Sound Mode (☞page 77)	NOTE	Input signal types and formats																	
		ANALOG	PCM		DTS-HD		DTS					DOLBY		DOLBY DIGITAL				Super Audio CD	
			PCM (multi ch)	PCM (2ch)	DTS-HD Master Audio	DTS-HD High Resolution Audio	DTS EXPRESS	DTS ES DSCRT (With Flag)	DTS ES MTRX (With Flag)	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 96/24	DOLBY TrueHD	DOLBY DIGITAL Plus	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag)	DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1ch)	DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch)	DSD (multi ch)	DSD (2ch)
MULTI CH IN																			
MULTI CH IN	∗1		●															○	
MULTI CH IN + PLIIx MOVIE	∗3		○															○	
MULTI CH IN + PLIIx MUSIC	∗2		○															○	
MULTI CH IN + PLIIz	∗4		○															○	
MULTI CH IN + Dolby EX	∗2		○															○	
MULTI CH IN 7.1	∗2		● (7.1)																
Audyssey DSX®			○																
DIRECT																			
DIRECT		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PURE DIRECT																			
PURE DIRECT		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Original surround mode																			
MULTI CH STEREO		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
VIRTUAL		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
STEREO																			
STEREO		●	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

∗1 If "Audyssey DSX®" (☞page 113) is set to "On", the Audyssey DSX® effect is added to the sound mode marked with ∗1.
∗2 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗3 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (☞page 128) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.
∗4 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (☞page 128) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

Relationship between video signals and monitor output

MAIN ZONE MONITOR OUT									
Video Conversion	Input connector			Output connector			Menu displayed		
	HDMI	COMPONENT	VIDEO	HDMI	COMPONENT	VIDEO	HDMI	COMPONENT	VIDEO
On	×	×	×	×	×	×	Only the menu is displayed	×	×
On	×	×	○	○ <VIDEO>		○ <VIDEO>	○ (VIDEO)		× (VIDEO)
On	×	○	×	○ <COMPONENT>	○ <COMPONENT>	×	○ (COMPONENT)	× (COMPONENT)	×
On	×	○	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
On	○	×	×	○ <HDMI>	×	×	○ (HDMI)	×	×
On	○	×	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
On	○	○	×		○ <COMPONENT>	×		× (COMPONENT)	×
On	○	○	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
Off	×	×	×	×	×	×	Only the menu is displayed	×	×
Off	×	×	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
Off	×	○	×		○ <COMPONENT>	×		× (COMPONENT)	×
Off	×	○	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
Off	○	×	×	○ <HDMI>	×	×		×	×
Off	○	×	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)
Off	○	○	×		○ <COMPONENT>	×		× (COMPONENT)	×
Off	○	○	○			○ <VIDEO>			× (VIDEO)

○ : Video signal input present
× : No video signal input

○ <>: The input signal between the < > marks is output.
× : No video signal output

○ ( ) : Superimposed on the picture indicated in ( ).
× ( ) : Only the picture in ( ) is output.
× : Neither the picture nor the menu is output.

ZONE2 MONITOR OUT					
Input connector			Output connector		
HDMI	COMPONENT	VIDEO	HDMI	COMPONENT	VIDEO
×	×	×	×	×	×
×	×	○			○ <VIDEO>
×	○	×		○ <COMPONENT>	×
×	○	○			○ <VIDEO>
○	×	×	○ <HDMI>	×	×
○	×	○			○ <VIDEO>
○	○	×		○ <COMPONENT>	×
○	○	○			○ <VIDEO>

○ : Video signal input present
× : No video signal input

○ <>: The input signal between the < > marks is output.
× : No video signal output

The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

NOTE

- The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.
- When the menu is operated on a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.

Video signal resolution conversion table

When “Video Conversion” (☞page 118) is set to “On”, “i/p Scaler” (☞page 118) is set to “Analog”, “Analog & HDMI” or “HDMI” are set, the resolution of the input video signal can be converted to a different resolution for output (☞page 6 “Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)”).
The relationship between the resolution of the convertible video signal and HDMI output resolution is shown in the table below.

	Output resolution / Input resolution	HDMI Output						
		480i/576i∗1	480p/576p	1080i	720p	1080p	1080p 24Hz	4K∗2
Video input	480i/576i	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Component video input	480i/576i	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	480p/576p	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	1080i	–	–	○	○	○	○	○
	720p	–	–	○	○	○	○	○
	1080p	–	–	–	–	○	○	○
HDMI input	480i/576i	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	480p/576p	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	1080i	–	–	○	○	○	○	○
	720p	–	–	○	○	○	○	○
	1080p 24Hz	–	–	–	–	○∗3	○∗4	○
	1080p	–	–	–	–	○	○	○
	4K	–	–	–	–	–	–	○∗5

○ The resolution set in “Resolution” (☞page 118) in the menu is output.
– Output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.
∗1 Only output when “i/p Scaler” in the menu is set to “Off”.
∗2 Output at a resolution of 3840 x 2160 (24/25/30Hz).
∗3 The resolution set in “Resolution” (☞page 118) in the menu is set to “Auto”, and a television that does not support 1080p 24Hz video signals is connected.
∗4 The resolution set in “Resolution” (☞page 118) in the menu is set to “Auto”, and a television that supports 1080p 24Hz video signals is connected.
∗5 Output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.

NOTE

- Component video and video output are output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.
- The 4K, 3D, Computer resolution, “x.v.Color”, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color or Adobe YCC601 color input to HDMI is output at the same resolution as the input video signal.
- When “Video Mode” in the menu is set to “Game” or “Auto” and game contents are played, the same resolution as the input video signal is output.
- When “Resolution” in the menu is set to “Auto”, the number of pixels in the television panel connected to the HDMI output connector is automatically detected, and the optimum resolution is output according to the table above.
- If 1080p 24Hz signals input from the HDMI terminal are converted into 1080p 60Hz/1080p 50Hz for output, they are output according to the specified “Format” (☞page 120) setting in the menu:
  “NTSC” – Output as 1080p 60Hz.
  “PAL” – Output as 1080p 50Hz.
- You can not convert 60Hz into 50Hz or vice versa.
- You can not convert 50Hz into 24Hz.
- This item does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.

Explanation of terms

A

A2DP
A2DP is one profile of Bluetooth definded for in-car devices or AV devices that use wireless communication instead of a cable.

Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color
The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

AirPlay
AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

App Store
App Store is a site that sells application software for such devices as the iPhone or iPod Touch, and is operated by Apple Inc.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®
Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion (A-DSX)
Audyssey DSX® is a scalable system that adds new speakers to improve surround impression.
Starting with a 5.1 system Audyssey DSX® first adds Wide channels for the biggest impact on envelopment. Research in human hearing has proven that information from the Wide channels is much more critical in the presentation of a realistic soundstage than the Back Surround channels found in traditional 7.1 systems. Audyssey DSX® then creates a pair of Height channels to reproduce the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues. In addition to these new Wide and Height channels, Audyssey DSX® applies Surround Envelopment Processing to enhance the blend between the front and surround channels.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®
Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT
MultEQ® XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

Auto Lip Sync
If you connect the unit to a TV that supports the Auto Lip Sync function, it can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

B

Bluetooth
Bluetooth is a short-distance wireless communication technology used for connecting handheld devices several meters apart. This enables notebook computers, PDA s, mobile phones, etc. to connect without a cable for transmitting audio and data.

D

Deep Color
An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.
Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

DLNA
DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED® products.

Dolby Digital
Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.
A total of 5.1 channels are played: 3 front channels ("FL", "FR" and "C"), 2 surround channels ("SL" and "SR") and the "LFE" channel for low frequencies.
Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a "three-dimensional" feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved.
A realistic, powerful sense of presence is achieved when playing movie sources in AV rooms as well.

Dolby Digital EX
Dolby Digital EX is a 6.1-channel surround format proposed by Dolby Laboratories that allows users to enjoy in their homes the "DOLBY DIGITAL SURROUND EX" audio format jointly developed by Dolby Laboratories and Lucas Films.
The 6.1 channels of sound, including surround back channels, provide improved sound positioning and expression of space.

Dolby Digital Plus
Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱ
Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱ is a matrix decoding technology developed by Dolby Laboratories.
Regular music such as that on CDs is encoded into 5 channels to achieve an excellent surround effect. The surround channel signals are converted into stereo and full band signals (with a frequency response of 20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater) to create a "three-dimensional" sound image offering a rich sense of presence for all stereo sources.

Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱx
Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱx is a further improved version of the Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱ matrix decoding technology.
Audio signals recorded in 2 channels are decoded to achieve a natural sound with up to 7.1 channels.
There are three modes: "Music" suited for playing music, "Movie" suited for playing movies, and "Game" which is optimized for playing games.

Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz
Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz introduces a new dimension to Home Entertainment through the addition of a pair of front height channels. Compatible with stereo, 5.1-channel and 7.1-channel content, Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz provides enhanced spaciousness, depth and dimension to movies, concert video and video game playback while maintaining the full integrity of the source mix.
Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz identifies and decodes spatial cues that occur naturally in all content, directing this information to the front height channels, complementing the performance of left and right surround sound speakers. Content that is encoded with Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz height channel information can be even more revealing, with perceptually discrete height channel information bringing an exciting new dimension to home entertainment.
Dolby Pro Logic Ⅱz, with front height channels is also an ideal alternative for households that cannot support the placement of back surround speakers of a typical 7.1-channel system but may have bookshelf space available to support the addition of height speakers.

Dolby TrueHD
Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.
This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. Dolby TrueHD is adopted for applications that put very high importance on sound quality.

Downmix
This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to less number of channels and plays back.
DTS
This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. When playing back audio by connecting this system with a device such as DTS amplifier, accurate sound field position and realistic sound effect as if you are in a movie theater can be obtained.
DTS 96/24
DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1 channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.
DTS Digital Surround
DTS Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1 channels of digital discrete surround sound.
DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1
DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound.
Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.
DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1
DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format inserting a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.
DTS Express
DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1 channels, 24 to 256 kbps).
DTS-HD
This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc. This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.
DTS-HD Master Audio
DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/ 24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.
DTS NEO:6™ Surround
DTS NEO:6™ is a matrix decoding technology for achieving 6.1-channel surround playback with 2-channel sources. It includes "DTS NEO:6 Cinema" suited for playing movies and "DTS NEO:6 Music" suited for playing music.
Dynamic range
The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

F

FLAC
FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality. The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000,2001,2002,2003,2004,2005,2006,2007,2008,2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

H

HDCP
When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.
HDMI
This is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier. Video signal and audio signal can be connected using 1 cable.

I

iTunes
iTunes is the name of the multimedia player provided by Apple Inc. It enables management and playback of multimedia contents including music and movies. iTunes supports many main file formats including AAC, WAV, and MP3.

L

LFE
This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass.

M

MAIN ZONE
The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE .
MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)
This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.
MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4
These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include "MPEG-1 Video", "MPEG-2 Video", "MPEG-4 Visual", "MPEG-4 AVC". Audio standards include "MPEG-1 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-4 AAC".

P

Pairing
Pairing is an operation required for settings to connect two Bluetooth devices. Pairing enables Bluetooth devices to access each other.

Progressive (sequential scanning)
This is a scanning system of video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and bleeding.

S

Sampling frequency
Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).
The number of readings taken in one second is called the "sampling frequency". The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance
This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms). Greater power can be obtained with this value smaller.

sYCC601 color
Like "x.v.Color", each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

V

vTuner
This is a free online content server for Internet radio. Note that usage fees are included in upgrade costs.
For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.
vTuner website: http://www.radiomarantz.com
This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

W

Windows Media DRM
This is a copyright protection technology developed by Microsoft.
Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device (WM-DRM) to protect the integrity of their content (Secure Content) so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (WM-DRM Software). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation list onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

Windows Media Player Ver.11 or later
This is a media player distributed free of charge by Microsoft Corporation.
It can play playlists created with Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, as well as WMA, DRM WMA, WAV, and other files.

WMA (Windows Media Audio)
This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.
WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player Ver.7, 7.1, Windows Media® Player for Windows® XP and Windows Media® Player 9 Series.
To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

X

x.v.Color
This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors. "x.v.Color" is trademark of Sony Corporation.

Z

ZONE2
This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE2 playback). The room for ZONE2 playback is called ZONE2.

ZONE3
This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE3 playback). The room for ZONE3 playback is called ZONE3.

Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:
1. Are the connections correct?
2. Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?
3. Are the other devices operating properly?
If this unit does not operate properly, check the items listed in the table below. Should the problem persist, there may be a malfunction.
In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact your store of purchase.

[General]

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
Power does not turn on.	• Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet. • The protection circuit is active. Disconnect the power plug from the electric outlet, wait 5 to 10 seconds and then insert it back into the outlet.	36 –
Power automatically switches to standby mode.	• The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again, or change the sleep timer settings. • "Auto Standby" is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable "Auto Standby", set "Auto Standby" on the menu to "Off".	94, 102 136
Display is off.	• Set "Display" on the menu to something other than "Off".	136
Set does not operate properly.	• Reset the microprocessor.	173

[HDMI]

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
No audio is output with HDMI connection.	• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. • When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set "HDMI Audio Out" on the menu to "AVP". • When outputting HDMI audio from a TV, set "HDMI Audio Out" on the menu to "TV".	11 116 116
No video is output with HDMI connection.	• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. • Set the input source to match the connected HDMI connector. • Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.	11 11, 36 12
When the following operations are performed on devices compatible with HDMI control, the same operations occur on this unit. • Power ON/OFF • Switching audio output devices • Adjust volume • Switch input source	• Set "HDMI Control" in the menu to "Off". Furthermore, if you do not want to link the power off operation with devices compatible with HDMI control, set "Power Off Control" in the menu to "Off".	92, 117
When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used and an operation is performed in MAIN ZONE, the following operations occur. • The player is turned off or playback pauses. • The input source on this unit automatically changes.	• "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On". In this case, the HDMI control function set for MAIN ZONE affects playback in ZONE2. When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used, set "HDMI Control" in the menu to "Off". • When the input source for ZONE2 is "SOURCE", select an input source that is different from the one for MAIN ZONE.	92, 117
When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used, Dolby TrueHD/ DTS HD Master Audio/Dolby Digital/ DTS cannot be played back in MAIN ZONE.	• Make sure that "HDMI Audio Out" in the menu is set to "AVP". When a same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, set the ZONE2 ON/OFF button to "OFF", or change the input source for ZONE2 to an input source that is different from the one for MAIN ZONE.	116

See overleaf

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used, no video or audio is output to TV in ZONE2.	• Make sure that the power is on for ZONE2. • Check the input source for ZONE2. • Check the output settings (resolution/audio format) for the input device	102 102 –
When playing back the input device just to use the HDMI ZONE2 function, the TV used for MAIN ZONE is turned on.	• "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On". When using the HDMI ZONE2 function, set "HDMI Control" in the menu to "Off".	92, 117

【Video】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
No picture appears.	• Check the connection between the video output terminal of this unit and the input terminal of the TV. • Match the input settings to the input terminal of the TV connected to this unit.	10, 14 –

【Audio】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
Audio is not output.	• Check the connections for all devices.	10,11,14,15, 16,17,18,19, 20,21,22,23, 24,25,26,27
	• Check the speaker connections and configurations.	26, 86, 87
	• Check the connections for PRE OUT terminals.	26, 86, 87
	• Check whether the audio device power is turned on.	–
	• Adjust the master volume.	37, 102
	• Cancel the mute mode.	37, 102
	• Check the connection with the playback device and select the proper input source.	36, 102
	• Match the input mode and the terminal assigned to be the digital input terminal.	124
	• Disconnect the headphones. No sound is output from the PRE OUT terminals when headphones are connected.	150
The volume does not increase.	• The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using "Limit" on the menu.	112
	• Power for external devices connected to the output connectors of the unit may not be turned on. Check the power of connected external devices.	–
No sound is produced from surround speaker.	• Check if the surround speakers are connected to the SURROUND terminals of Power Amplifire.	–
No sound is produced from surround back speaker.	• Set "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" on the menu to something other than "None".	128
	• Set the sound mode to something other than "STEREO" and "VIRTUAL".	77
No sound is produced from front height speaker.	• Set "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" on the menu to something other than "None".	128
No sound is produced from front wide speaker.	• Set "Speaker Config." – "Front Wide" on the menu to something other than "None".	128

☞ See overleaf

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
No sound is produced from subwoofer.	• Check the subwoofer connections. • Turn on the subwoofer's power. • Set "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" on the menu to "Yes". • If "Front" and "Center" for "Speaker Config." are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode.	26, 86, 87 – 127 127, 128
DTS sound is not output.	• Set "Decode Mode" on the menu to "Auto" or "DTS".	124
Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.	• Make HDMI connections.	11
Dolby PLⅡ mode or DTS NEO:6 mode cannot be selected.	• Check that "Speaker Config." – "Center" or "Surround" is set to other than "None". If the speaker system is 2.0/2.1ch, this sound mode cannot be selected. • When headphones are used, Dolby PLⅡ or DTS NEO:6 cannot be selected.	127 –
Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® cannot be selected.	• Switch the sound mode to other than "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT". • When headphones are used, Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® cannot be selected.	77 –
Audyssey DSX® cannot be selected.	• Check that "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" or "Front Wide" is set to other than "None". • Check that "Speaker Config." – "Center" is set to other than "None". • Switch the sound mode to DOLBY listening mode or DTS listening mode. • When headphones are used, Audyssey DSX® cannot be selected.	128 127 77 –
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® cannot be selected.	• Run Audyssey® Setup.	29, 88
"M-DAX" cannot be selected.	• Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate=44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, "M-DAX" cannot be used. • Switch the sound mode to other than "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT".	111 77

【HD Radio】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
Reception fails, or there is a lot of noise or distortion.	• Change the antenna orientation or position. • Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit. • Use an FM outdoor antenna. • Separate the antenna from other connection cables.	23 23 23 23

【iPod / USB memory device / Internet radio / Media server / Flickr / Pandora / SiriusXM / Spotify】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
iPod cannot be played.	• Some iPods do not support being used connected directly to the iPod/USB port.	20
The file names are not displayed properly ("...", etc.).	• Characters that cannot be displayed are used. This is not a malfunction. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a "." (period). • Invalid tags are used for files within the USB memory device connected to this unit. Use tags that are supported by this unit.	– 42
When a USB memory device is connected, "No Connection" is displayed.	• The set cannot recognize a USB memory device. Check the connection. • This unit supports mass storage class and MTP-compatible USB memory devices. It will not recognize other USB memory devices. • A USB memory device that the set cannot recognize is connected. This is not a malfunction. marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. • USB memory device is connected via USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the iPod/USB port. • The unit supports file structures with up to 8 levels and a total maximum of 5000 subfolders and files per 1 folder. Change the file structure of the USB memory device if necessary.	20 – – – 42
Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.	• The USB memory device format should be set to FAT16 or FAT32. For details, refer to the USB memory device's operating instructions. • If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only files in partition one can be played. • Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record the files in a compatible format. • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.	– – 42 42

See overleaf

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
Internet radio cannot be played.	• Ethernet cable is not properly connected or network is disconnected. Check the connection status. • Program is being broadcast in non-compatible format. Only Internet radio programs in MP3 and WMA can be played on this unit. • The firewall of the PC or router has been activated. Check the firewall settings of the connected PC or router. • Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Choose a radio station that is currently broadcasting. • IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address. • Some radio stations may go silent at certain times of the day. In this case, no audio is output even when a station is received. Try again later, or switch to another radio station.	27 54 – 54 131 –
Files stored on a computer cannot be played.	• Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format. • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit. • Set and computer are connected by USB cable. The set's iPod/USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer. • Media sharing settings are not correct. Change media sharing settings so that the unit can access the folders on your computer.	57 57 – 58
Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.	• If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting. • If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder. • If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.	– 58 –
Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.	• The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings. • Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power. • Server is not running. Launch the server. • Set's IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address.	– – – 131
Cannot connect to preset or favorite radio stations.	• Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again. • Radio station is not currently in service. It is not possible to connect to radio stations that are no longer in service.	– –
A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.	• Connection to the network is unstable. Reconnect to the network or redo the "Network" setting in the menu.	27, 132

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
For some radio stations, "Radio station server full" or "Connection down" is displayed and station cannot be connected to.	• Station is congested or not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again.	–
Sound is broken during playback.	• Network or USB memory device's signal transfer speed is slow or communications lines or radio station is congested. This is not a malfunction. When playing broadcast data with a high bit rate, the sound may be broken, depending on the communications conditions.	–
Sound quality is poor or noise is heard during play.	• File being played has a low bit rate. This is not a malfunction.	–
Cannot login to Pandora. ("Email address" or "Password" is displayed.)	• Login information is incorrect. Check if the "Email address" for Pandora has been properly entered. Re-enter the "Password". (Password is not displayed.) http://www.pandora.com/marantz	64

【AirPlay】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
The AirPlay icon is not displayed in iTunes or on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.	• This unit and the computer or iPhone/iPod touch/iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect the computer or iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to the same network as this unit. • iTunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad do not have firmware that supports AirPlay installed. Update to the latest firmware.	27 138
No sound.	• The volume in iTunes or on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is set to the minimum setting. Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • This unit is not selected in the screen that is displayed when iTunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is started. Start iTunes or switch on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, click the AirPlay icon in the displayed screen, and select this unit. • AirPlay playback has not started. Click the ▶ button in iTunes or press the ▶ button on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.	– 75 –

See overleaf

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
When using AirPlay with the iPhone/ iPod touch/iPad, the sound suffers from intermittent breaks or AirPlay does not function.	• Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay. • When playing via a wireless connection, outside conditions may affect the unit. To remedy this, change the network environment, e.g. shorten the distance to the wireless LAN access point. • Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad application or iTunes to the latest version.	– – –

【M-XPort】

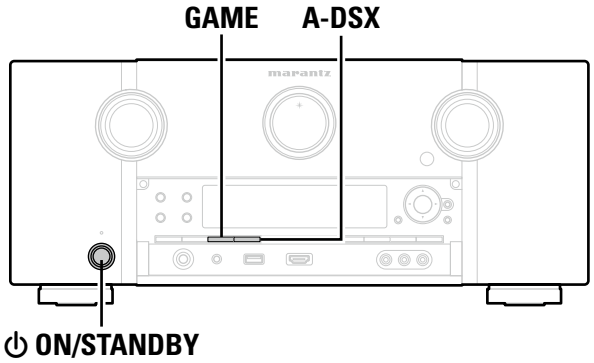
Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
Audio is not output when a wireless receiver (RX101 is connected).	• Check that the Bluetooth device and Wireless receiver (RX101) are correctly paired.	24, 166, 168

【Remote control unit】

Symptom	Cause/Solution	Page
The set cannot be operated with the remote control unit.	• Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries. • Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°. • Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit. • Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks. • The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light. • The setting of the zone to operate does not match. Press **ZONE SELECT** to select the zone to operate.	156 156 156 156 156 30, 102

Resetting the microprocessor

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed.
When the microprocessor is reset, all the settings are reset to their default values.



1 **Turn off the power using ⏻.**

2 **Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY while simultaneously pressing GAME and A-DSX.**

3 **Once the display starts flashing at intervals of about 1 second, release the two buttons.**

If in step 3 the display does not flash at intervals of about 1 second, start over from step 1.

Specifications

❑ Audio section

- **Analog**

Input sensitivity/Input impedance:	200 mV/47 kΩ
Frequency response:	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (DIRECT mode)
S/N:	105 dB (IHF–A weighted, DIRECT mode)
Distortion:	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (DIRECT mode)
Rated output:	Unbalanced pre-output: 1.2 V Balanced pre-output: 2.4 V

- **Digital**

D/A output:	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback) Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB) S/N ratio — 102 dB Dynamic range — 100 dB
Digital input:	Format — Digital audio interface

- **Phono equalizer (PHONO input — MEDIA PLAYER OUT)**

Input sensitivity:	2.5 mV
RIAA deviation:	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
S/N:	74 dB (A weighting, with 5 mV input)
Rated output:	150 mV
Distortion factor:	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)

❑ Video section

- **Standard video connectors**

Input/output level and impedance:	1 Vp-p, 75 Ω
Frequency response:	5 Hz – 10 MHz — +1, –3 dB

- **Color component video connector**

Input/output level and impedance:	Y (brightness) signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω P_B / C_B signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω P_R / C_R signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω
Frequency response:	5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB

❑ Tuner section

(ANTENNA input – MEDIA PLAYER OUT)

		[FM]	[AM]
		(Note: µV at 75 Ω, 0 dBf = 1 x 10^{-15} W)	
Receiving Range:		87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz	530 kHz – 1710 kHz
Usable Sensitivity:		1.5 µV (14.8 dBf)	20 µV
S/N (IHF–A weighted):	MONO	78 dB	
	STEREO	68 dB	
	HD	85 dB	85 dB
Distortion (1 kHz):	MONO	0.1 %	
	STEREO	0.2 %	
	HD	0.02 %	0.02 %

❑ General

Power supply:	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
Power consumption:	60 W
Power consumption in standby mode:	0.2 W
Power consumption in CEC standby mode:	0.5 W
Power consumption in network standby mode:	2.7 W

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

Index

☞ Numerics

2.1-channel 87
3D 12
5.1-channel 85, 87
6.1-channel 85, 86
7.1-channel 85, 86

☞ A

A2DP 24, 166
Accessories 2
Add New Feature 139
Adjust EQ 114
Adjusting the master volume 37
Adobe RGB color / Adobe YCC601 color 166
AirPlay 75, 166
AM loop antenna 23
App Store 166
ARC 9
Aspect Ratio 119
Audio 108, 120
Audio Delay 112
Audio Display 120
Audyssey 112
Audyssey DSX® 84, 113
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® 113, 166
Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion 166
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® 113, 166
Audyssey MultEQ® XT 112, 166
Audyssey® Setup 29, 88
Auto Lip Sync 116, 166
Auto Preset Memory 49
Auto Standby 136

☞ B

Bass 110, 128, 135
Bluetooth 24, 166
Brightness 116

☞ C

Cable
  Audio cable 13, 26
  Coaxial digital cable 13
  Component video cable 13
  Ethernet cable 13
  HDMI cable 10, 11
  Optical cable 13
  Speaker cable 26
  Video cable 13
Center Image 109
Center Width 110
Channel 135
Channel Indicator 136
Characters 107
Component 119
Component Video Out 119
Condensation 3
Connection
  7.1CH IN 25
  Blu-ray Disc player 11, 17
  Cable TV 15
  CD player 21
  DC OUT 91
  Digital camcorder 11, 18
  DVD player 11, 16
  External power amplifier 26
  Game console 11
  HDMI 8
  HD Radio reception 23
  Home network (LAN) 27
  iPod (USB) 20
  Media player 11, 19
  Power cord 28
  Record player 22
  Remote control jacks 90
  RS-232C 91
  Satellite tuner 15
  Set-top box 11, 15
  Speaker 86
  TV 10, 14
  USB memory device 20
  Wireless receiver 24
Content Type 12
Contrast 116
Control Monitor 117
Crossovers 129
Curve Copy 114

☞ D

Decode Mode 124
Deep Color 12, 166
Dialogue 110
Dialogue Level 110
Dimension 109
Direct Mode 39, 40
Direct Tune 48
Display 136, 152
Distances 128
DLNA 166
Dolby
  Dolby Digital 81, 166
  Dolby Digital EX 81, 166
  Dolby Digital Plus 81, 166
  Dolby Pro Logic 81
  Dolby Pro Logic II 81, 166
  Dolby Pro Logic IIx 81, 166
  Dolby Pro Logic IIz 81, 84, 166
  Dolby TrueHD 81, 166
Downmix 167
DTS 167
  DTS 96/24 ..... 81, 167
  DTS Digital Surround 167
  DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 ..... 81, 167
  DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 ..... 81, 167
  DTS Express 81, 167
  DTS-HD 81, 167
  DTS-HD High Resolution Audio 167
  DTS-HD Master Audio 167
  DTS NEO:6™ Surround 81, 167
Dual backup memory function 97
Dynamic Compression 109
Dynamic EQ 113
Dynamic range 167
Dynamic Volume 113

☞ E

Edit Name 131
Enhancer 116
Error messages (Audyssey® Setup) 34

☞ F

Favorite Memory 73
Firmware 138
FLAC 167
Flickr 61, 62
FM 46
FM indoor antenna 23
Format 120
Friendly Name 131
Front Display 136
Front Height 128
Front height speaker 85, 86
Front Panel 150
Front Wide 128
Front wide speaker 85, 86

☞ G

General 134
Graphic EQ 114

☞ H

HDCP 12, 167
HDMI 8, 12, 167
HDMI Audio Out 116
HDMI Control 92, 117
HDMI Setup 116
Headphones 151
Height Gain 110
Hide Sources 124
High Pass Filter 135
Home Theater EQ 109
Hue 116

☞ I

Info Display 119
Information 131, 137
  Audio 137
  Firmware 137
  Video 137
  ZONE 137
Input Assign 122
Input Mode 124
Inputs 121
Input Select 124
Input signal 161
Inputting characters 107
IP Control 131
i/p Scaler 118
iTunes 167

☞ L

Language 135
Lch Level 135
Levels 129
LFE 167
Limit 112
Listening mode 77
Listening position 29
Lock 139
Loudness Management 109
Low Frequency Effects 109

☞ M

Maintenance Mode 133
MAIN ZONE 167
Manual Setup 127
M-DAX 111
Menu map 103
Mode 111
MP3 167
MPEG 167
MultEQ® XT 112
Mute Level 112, 135

☞ N

Network 35, 130
Noise Reduction 116
Notifications 138

☞ O

On-screen Info 119
Operation Mode 40
Output Settings 118

☞ P

Pairing 168
Pandora® 61, 64
Panel lock function 97
Panorama 109
Parameter Check 35
Picture Adjust 116
Picture View 74
Playback
- Auto surround 78
- Blu-ray Disc player 37
- CD player 38
- Direct 77, 82
- DVD player 37
- FLAC 42, 57
- Flickr 62
- FM 46
- Internet radio 54
- iPod (USB) 39
- JPEG 42, 57
- MP3 ..... 42, 54, 57
- MPEG-4 AAC 42, 57
- NAS 57
- Original listening mode 82
- Pandora® 64
- PC 57
- Pure direct 77, 82
- SiriusXM 67
- Spotify 69
- Stereo 82
- Super Audio CD 37
- USB memory device 42
- WAV 42, 57
- WMA 42, 54, 57
- ZONE2 102
- ZONE3 102

Power Off Control 117
Power On Level 112
Power On Volume 135
Preset codes 140, 177
Preset Memory 50
Preset Name 51
Preset Skip 52
Progressive 168
Progressive Mode 119

☞ R

Random 41, 72
Rch Level 135
Rear panel 154
Reference Level Offset 113
Remote control setting 30, 88
Remote control unit 155
- Inserting the batteries 156
- Operating external devices 143
- Operating learn function 146
- Registering preset codes 140
- Setting the back light 148

Remote lock function 98
Remote Mode 39, 40
Remove Favorites 74
Repeat 41, 72
Resetting the microprocessor 173
Resolutions 118

☞ S

Sampling frequency 168
Saturation 116
Scale 112
Selecting the input source 36
Settings 132
Setup Lock 139
SiriusXM 61, 67
Sleep timer 94, 102
Slideshow 74
Sound Mode 77, 158
Source Level 124
Source Rename 123
Speaker
- Connect 86
- Install 84
- Set up 29, 88

Speaker Config. 127
Speaker impedance 168
Speakers 126
Speaker Select 110
Speaker Selection 114
Spotify 61, 69
Stage Height 114
Stage Width 114
Standby Source 117
Subwoofer 111
Subwoofer Level 111
Subwoofer setting 30
Surr. Back 128
Surround back speaker 85, 86
Surround Parameter 109
sYCC601 color 168

☞ T

Text Search 71
Tone 110
Tone Control 110
Trademark 157
Treble 110, 135
Trigger Out 1 136
Trigger Out 2 136
Troubleshooting 169
Tune Mode 47
Turning off the sound temporarily 37
Turning the power on 36
TV Format 120

☞ U

Update 138

☞ V

Video 115
Video conversion 6
Video Conversion 118
Video Mode 118
Video Output 117
Video Source 125
Volume 112, 119
Volume Display 119
Volume Level 135
Volume Limit 135
vTuner 56, 168

☞ W

Web control 95
Windows Media DRM 168
Windows Media Player 168
WMA 168

☞ X

x.v.Color 168

☞ Z

ZONE2 ..... 100, 153, 168
ZONE2 Setup 135
ZONE3 ..... 100, 153, 168
ZONE3 Setup 135
Zone Rename 136

List of preset codes

AVR

M	marantz	0000

TV group (1***)

A	Acer	1141
	Acer	1141
	Admiral	1009, 1089, 1002
	Aiko	1059
	Aiwa	1117, 1118
	Aiwa	1117
	Aiwa	1118
	Akai	1001
	Amtron	1023
	Anam	1113
	Anam National	1023, 1069, 1092
	AOC	1003, 1049, 1024, 1127
	Audiovox	1023
B	Bell & Howell	1009, 1025
	Benq	1142
	Benq	1104, 1142
	Broksonic	1097, 1098, 1113, 1003
	Broksonic	1098
	Broksonic	1097
C	Celebrity	1001
	Citizen	1003, 1023, 1059, 1063, 1026, 1013
	Colortyme	1003, 1043
	Contec/Cony	1045, 1047, 1023, 1113
	Craig	1023, 1113, 1020, 1022
	Crown	1023, 1067
	Curtis Mathes	1003, 1110, 1025, 1062, 1026, 1103, 1013
D	Daewoo	1003, 1059, 1024, 1084, 1101, 1013, 1035, 1036
	Daewoo	1101
	Daytron	1003, 1013, 1016
	Dimensia	1110, 1103
	Dumont	1010, 1003, 1153
E	Electroband	1001
	Electrohome	1003, 1133, 1001, 1069
	Emerson	1003, 1020, 1044, 1038, 1045, 1048, 1055, 1023, 1025, 1061, 1022, 1094, 1096, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1101, 1015, 1021
	Envision	1003
F	Fisher	1051, 1025, 1091, 1160
	Fujitsu	1124, 1125
	Fujitsu	1038, 1155
	Funai	1038, 1023, 1113
G	Gateway	1150
	GE	1110, 1003, 1085, 1046, 1054, 1133, 1018, 1069, 1022, 1103, 1113, 1136, 1153
	Goldstar	1045, 1024, 1112, 1080, 1100, 1013, 1003, 1030, 1154
H	Hallmark	1003
	Hisense	1116
	Hitachi	1041, 1003, 1045, 1047, 1032, 1065, 1068, 1088, 1082, 1037, 1094, 1031, 1159
	Hitachi	1145, 1139, 1012
	Hitachi	1139, 1140
I	Infinity	1067
J	Janeil	1134
	JBL	1067
	JC Penney	1003, 1046, 1047, 1054, 1133, 1110, 1019, 1112, 1024, 1063, 1018, 1026, 1083, 1085, 1100, 1103, 1013, 1154
	Jensen	1003
	JVC	1045, 1047, 1050, 1060, 1065, 1028, 1029
	JVC	1028
	JVC	1028
K	Kawasho	1003, 1001
	Kenwood	1003
	Kloss Novabeam	1056, 1023, 1057, 1134
	KTV	1023, 1073, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1033, 1034
L	LG	1024, 1030
M	M.Wards	1002, 1009, 1038
	Maganvox	1067
	Magnavox	1003, 1052, 1053, 1056, 1057, 1063, 1081, 1067, 1106
	marantz	1000, 1003, 1122, 1067, 1031
	Mitsubishi	1024
	Mitsubishi	1003, 1051, 1133, 1122, 1024, 1115
	Motorola	1069, 1014
N	NEC	1003, 1043, 1024, 1069, 1012
	NET-TV	1137
	NET-TV	1150
O	Orion	1020, 1096
P	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111, 1017
	Panasonic	1067, 1069, 1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1111
	Panasonic	1095, 1111
	Philips	1003, 1045, 1052, 1054, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1063, 1069, 1067, 1011
	Philips Magnavox	1106, 1067
	Philips Magnavox	1106
	Pioneer	1003, 1018, 1070, 1071, 1037, 1094
	Pioneer	1145
	Pioneer	1147
	Pioneer	1149
	Plasmsync	1135
	Portland	1003, 1059, 1024, 1013
	Price Club	1026
	Prism	1018
	Proscan	1110, 1085, 1103, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008
	Proscan	1110
	Proton	1003, 1045
Q	Quasar	1069, 1073, 1111, 1010, 1153
R	Radio Shack	1025, 1103, 1113, 1024
	Radio Shack/ Realistic	1003, 1045, 1023, 1110, 1025, 1015, 1100, 1013
	RCA	1110, 1003, 1049, 1024, 1069, 1075, 1079, 1085, 1087, 1088, 1093, 1094, 1101, 1103, 1085, 1113, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008
	RCA	1110
	RCA	1153
	RCA	1110
	RCA	1014
	Realistic	1025, 1103
	Runco	1010, 1153
S	Sampo	1150
	Sampo	1150
	Samsung	1003, 1045, 1024, 1062, 1026, 1078, 1083, 1090, 1100, 1013, 1105, 1040
	Samsung	1105, 1114, 1157, 1090
	Samsung	1120, 1121, 1105
	Samsung	1148
	Samsung	1146
	Sansui	1119
	Sanyo	1003, 1051, 1025, 1072, 1077, 1091, 1156, 1157, 1158
	Sharp	1003, 1045, 1055, 1015, 1064, 1066, 1076, 1089, 1013, 1014
	Sharp	1014
	Sharp	1123, 1014
	Signature	1009
	Sony	1001, 1102
	Sony	1001
	Sony	1001
	Sony	1001
	Sony	1108
	Soundesign	1003, 1038, 1023, 1063, 1113
	Starlite	1023
	Supre-Macy	1134
	Sylvania	1151
	Sylvania	1003, 1042, 1052, 1053, 1063, 1056, 1057, 1067, 1089, 1151, 1039
	Sylvania	1089
	Symphonic	1044, 1023, 1039
T	Tandy	1014
	Tatung	1069
	Technics	1018
	Techwood	1003, 1018
	Teknika	1003, 1009, 1038, 1045, 1047, 1063, 1023, 1059, 1024, 1063, 1026, 1111, 1013, 1113
	Telecaption	1074
	Toshiba	1042, 1025, 1074, 1026, 1098, 1003, 1107, 1019
	Toshiba	1136
	Toshiba	1111, 1135
	Toshiba	1135
	Toshiba	1019
	Toshiba	1098
	Toshiba	1107
	Totevision	1013
U	Universal	1046, 1054
V	Video Concepts	1113
	Viewsonic	1130, 1128, 1006, 1131, 1129, 1109, 1143, 1150, 1022
	Viewsonic	1150, 1145
	Viewsonic	1138
W	Wards	1003, 1009, 1044, 1038, 1046, 1052, 1054, 1056, 1110, 1057, 1024, 1015, 1067, 1086, 1103
	White Westinghouse	1101, 1001
Y	Yamaha	1003, 1024
Z	Zenith	1010, 1153
	Zenith	1132
	Zenith	1010, 1153
	Zenith	1010, 1153
	Zenith	1010, 1153
	Zenith	1010, 1003, 1009, 1144, 1153

DVD group (2***)

A	Aiwa	2036
	Aiwa	2037
	Apex	2017, 2034, 2018, 2019, 2021, 2012
B	Bluray	2064
	BOSE	2038, 2039, 2063
D	Denon	2047, 2048
F	Funai	2049
G	GE	2020, 2029, 2033, 2009
H	Harman Kardon	2061
	Hitachi	2031, 2012, 2008
	Hitachi	2031
J	JVC	2006, 2010, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043
	JVC	2042
	JVC	2043
K	Kenwood	2054, 2053
	Koss	2058
M	Magnavox	2023, 2025, 2011, 2007
	marantz	2000, 2025, 2065
	Mitsubishi	2011, 2015
O	Onkyo	2062
	Onkyo	2062
	Oritron	2030, 2009
P	Panasonic	2003, 2015, 2016
	Panasonic	2055
	Philips	2007, 2011
	Philips	2058
	Pioneer	2002, 2014
	Pioneer	2056
	Proscan	2020, 2032, 2009
R	RCA	2020, 2005, 2009, 2035
	RCA	2057
S	Sampo	2041
	Samsung	2008, 2022, 2024, 2027, 2012
	Samsung	2022
	Samsung	2027
	Sanyo	2050, 2052
	Sanyo	2052
	Sharp	2044, 2045
	Sherwood	2051
	Sony	2001, 2013
	Sony	2059

T	Toshiba	2004, 2026, 2028, 2008
	Toshiba	2028
	Toshiba	2026
Y	Yamaha	2046
	Yamaha	2060
Z	Zenith	2010
	Zenith	2010

CD group (3＊＊＊)

A	AIWA	3001, 3002, 3003
	AKAI	3004, 3005, 3006
	AUDIO	3007
	AUDIO LABS	3008
C	CALIFORNIA	3008
	CARVER	3010, 3011, 3009
	CASIO	3012, 3020
	CURTIS	3020, 3012
D	DENON	3013
E	EMERSON	3014
F	FISHER	3011, 3015, 3016, 3017, 3018
G	GE	3019
	GENEXXA	3014, 3021, 3020
H	HARMON	3022, 3023, 3051
	HITACHI	3020
I	INKEL	3024
J	JC PENNEY	3012, 3020, 3025
	JVC	3026, 3027
K	KARDON	3022, 3051, 3023
	KENWOOD	3028, 3029, 3030, 3031, 3032, 3033
	KRELL	3010
L	LUXMAN	3035, 3036, 3037, 3038
	LX I	3012, 3020, 3014
M	MAGNAVOX	3010, 3039, 3040
	MARANTZ	3000, 3010, 3041, 3042, 3043
	MATHES	3012, 3020
	MCS	3012, 3020
	MGA	3023
	MISSION	3010
	MITSUBISHI	3023, 3044
N	NAD	3034, 3045
	NAKAMICHI	3046, 3047, 3048
	NEC MCS	3025
	NIKKO	3007, 3016
O	ONKYO	3049, 3050, 3051, 3052, 3055, 3102, 3103
	OPTIMUS	3011, 3014, 3020, 3028, 3053, 3054, 3056, 3057, 3058, 3059
P	PANASONIC	3008, 3060, 3061
	PHILIPS	3009, 3010, 3010, 3040
	PIONEER	3020, 3021, 3062, 3063, 3064
Q	QUASAR	3008
R	RCA	3011, 3014, 3065, 3066, 3067, 3068, 3069
	REALISTIC	3011, 3014, 3020, 3042, 3054, 3057
	ROTEL	3010
	RS ORIGINAL	3070
S	SAE	3010, 3083
	SAMSUNG	3071
	SANSUI	3014, 3068, 3072, 3073
	SANYO	3011, 3018, 3074, 3075, 3076
	SCOTT	3014
	SEARS	3012, 3014, 3020, 3028, 3042
	SHARP	3028, 3042, 3077
	SHERWOOD	3042, 3056, 3070, 3078, 3024
	SHURE	3025
	SONY	3039, 3079, 3080, 3081, 3082, 3097, 3098, 3099, 3100, 3101
	SYLVANIA	3010
	SYMPHONIC	3083
T	TEAC	3016, 3042, 3057, 3083, 3084, 3085, 3086
	TECHNICA	3007, 3008, 3061, 3087, 3088
	THETA DIGITAL	3040
	TOSHIBA	3045
V	VICTOR	3026
Y	YAMAHA	3007, 3089, 3090, 3091, 3092
Z	ZENITH	3016, 3093, 3094, 3095, 3096

CBL/SAT group (4＊＊＊)

A	Alphastar	4027
	Amstrad	4046, 4047, 4050
	Apple TV	4068
	Atsky	4048
B	BSkyB	4021, 4045, 4046
C	Chaparral	4039
D	Direct Tv	4001, 4016, 4044
	DISH Network	4030
	Drake	4026
E	Echostar	4007, 4017, 4018, 4019, 4020, 4062, 4063, 4064
	Eurosky	4056, 4047
	Express Vu	4017
F	Foxtel	4051
	Freesat	4056
	Fujitsu	4025
G	GE	4002, 4008, 4009
	General Instruments	4036, 4037
	Gradiente	4044, 4057
H	Hitachi	4001, 4015
	Hughes Network	4001, 4016
	Humax	4049, 4050, 4051, 4052, 4053
J	Janeil	4025
	JVC	4017
L	LG Smart TV	4069
M	marantz	4000
	Mitsubishi	4001
N	NETGEAR Neo TV	4072
	Nokia	4058, 4059, 4060, 4061
O	Optima	4048
P	Panasonic	4004, 4010
	Philips	4031, 4044, 4057
	Philips	4035
	Proscan	4002, 4008, 4009, 4011
R	Radio Shack	4036, 4037
	RCA	4002, 4008, 4009
	RCA	4029
	Realistic	4040
	Roku XDS	4073
	Rural Cable	4036
S	Samsung	4022, 4027, 4042, 4043, 4054, 4055, 4050
	Schneider	4041, 4043
	SKY	4044, 4045, 4057
	Skyplus	4048
	Skysat	4041, 4047, 4056
	Sony	4003, 4012, 4014, 4065, 4066, 4067
	Sony	4014, 4070
	Star Choice	4032
	Star Trak	4024
	STS	4038
	SuperDish	4028
T	Teac	4049
	Thomson	4046, 4056
	Toshiba	4001, 4034
U	Universum	4056
	Uniden	4005, 4006, 4013
V	Video Pall	4025
W	Western Digital WD TV	4071
Z	Zenith	4033, 4025
	Zenith	4023

BD group (5＊＊＊)

D	Denon	5034, 5035, 5036
H	Hitachi	5031, 5032, 5033
I	Integra	5013
J	JVC	5014, 5015, 5017, 5018, 5019, 5020
L	LG	5010, 5011
M	marantz	5000, 5026, 5027
	Mitsubishi	5024, 5025
O	Onkyo	5013
P	Panasonic	5001, 5002, 5003
	Philips	5004
	Pioneer	5005
R	RCA	5012
S	Samsung	5005
	Sharp	5028, 5029, 5030
	Sony	5007, 5008, 5009, 5016
T	Toshiba	5012
Y	Yamaha	5021, 5022, 5023

License

This section describes software license used for this unit. To maintain the correct content, the original (English) is used.

❑ Boost

http://www.boost.org/
Boost Software License - Version 1.0 - August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❑ Expat

http://www.jclark.com/xml/expat.html

Expat License. Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❑ FastDelegate

http://www.codeproject.com/KB/cpp/FastDelegate.aspx

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CODE PROJECT OPEN LICENSE ("LICENSE"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HEREIN, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE AUTHOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HEREIN IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ACCEPT AND BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, YOU CANNOT MAKE ANY USE OF THE WORK.

1. Definitions.
   a. "Articles" means, collectively, all articles written by Author which describes how the Source Code and Executable Files for the Work may be used by a user.
   b. "Author" means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.
   c. "Derivative Work" means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works.
   d. "Executable Files" refer to the executables, binary files, configuration and any required data files included in the Work.
   e. "Publisher" means the provider of the website, magazine, CD-ROM, DVD or other medium from or by which the Work is obtained by You.
   f. "Source Code" refers to the collection of source code and configuration files used to create the Executable Files.
   g. "Standard Version" refers to such a Work if it has not been modified, or has been modified in accordance with the consent of the Author, such consent being in the full discretion of the Author.
   h. "Work" refers to the collection of files distributed by the Publisher, including the Source Code, Executable Files, binaries, data files, documentation, whitepapers and the Articles.
   i. "You" is you, an individual or entity wishing to use the Work and exercise your rights under this License.
2. Fair Use/Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this License is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, fair dealing, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.
3. License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Author hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below:
   a. You may use the standard version of the Source Code or Executable Files in Your own applications.
   b. You may apply bug fixes, portability fixes and other modifications obtained from the Public Domain or from the Author. A Work modified in such a way shall still be considered the standard version and will be subject to this License.
   c. You may otherwise modify Your copy of this Work (excluding the Articles) in any way to create a Derivative Work, provided that You insert a prominent notice in each changed file stating how, when and where You changed that file.
   d. You may distribute the standard version of the Executable Files and Source Code or Derivative Work in aggregate with other (possibly commercial) programs as part of a larger (possibly commercial) software distribution.
   e. The Articles discussing the Work published in any form by the author may not be distributed or republished without the Author's consent. The author retains copyright to any such Articles. You may use the Executable Files and Source Code pursuant to this License but you may not repost or republish or otherwise distribute or make available the Articles, without the prior written consent of the Author.

   Any subroutines or modules supplied by You and linked into the Source Code or Executable Files this Work shall not be considered part of this Work and will not be subject to the terms of this License.
4. Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Author hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, import, and otherwise transfer the Work.
5. Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions:
   a. You agree not to remove any of the original copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices and associated disclaimers that may appear in the Source Code or Executable Files.
   b. You agree not to advertise or in any way imply that this Work is a product of Your own.
   c. The name of the Author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Work without the prior written consent of the Author.
   d. You agree not to sell, lease, or rent any part of the Work. This does not restrict you from including the Work or any part of the Work inside a larger software distribution that itself is being sold. The Work by itself, though, cannot be sold, leased or rented.
   e. You may distribute the Executable Files and Source Code only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy of the Executable Files or Source Code You distribute and ensure that anyone receiving such Executable Files and Source Code agrees that the terms of this License apply to such Executable Files and/or Source Code. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute the Executable Files or Source Code with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License.
   f. You agree not to use the Work for illegal, immoral or improper purposes, or on pages containing illegal, immoral or improper material. The Work is subject to applicable export laws. You agree to comply with all such laws and regulations that may apply to the Work after Your receipt of the Work.
6. Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer. THIS WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS", "WHERE IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OR GUARANTEES. YOU, THE USER, ASSUME ALL RISK IN ITS USE, INCLUDING COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, PATENT INFRINGEMENT, SUITABILITY, ETC. AUTHOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, MERCHANTABLE QUALITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR THAT THE WORK (OR ANY PORTION THEREOF) IS CORRECT, USEFUL, BUG-FREE OR FREE OF VIRUSES. YOU MUST PASS THIS DISCLAIMER ON WHENEVER YOU DISTRIBUTE THE WORK OR DERIVATIVE WORKS.
7. Indemnity. You agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Author and the Publisher from and against any claims, suits, losses, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses (including reasonable legal or attorneys??? fees) resulting from or relating to any use of the Work by You.
8. Limitation on Liability. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

9. Termination.
a. This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of any term of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 will survive any termination of this License.
b. If You bring a copyright, trademark, patent or any other infringement claim against any contributor over infringements You claim are made by the Work, your License from such contributor to the Work ends automatically.
c. Subject to the above terms and conditions, this License is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, the Author reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.
10. Publisher. The parties hereby confirm that the Publisher shall not, under any circumstances, be responsible for and shall not have any liability in respect of the subject matter of this License. The Publisher makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work and shall not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. The Publisher reserves the right to cease making the Work available to You at any time without notice
11. Miscellaneous
a. This License shall be governed by the laws of the location of the head office of the Author or if the Author is an individual, the laws of location of the principal place of residence of the Author.
b. If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this License, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.
c. No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.
d. This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed herein. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified herein. The Author shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Author and You

❑ libogg

http://www.xiph.org/ogg/

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❑ libvorbis

http://www.xiph.org/vorbis/

Copyright (c) 2002-2004 Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❑ Tremolo

http://wss.co.uk/pinknoise/tremolo

Copyright (C) 2002-2009 Xiph.org Foundation Changes Copyright (C) 2009-2010 Robin Watts for Pinknoise Productions Ltd

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❑ Tremor

http://wiki.xiph.org/index.php/Tremor

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❑ Mersenne Twister

http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/MT2002/CODES/mt19937ar.c

Copyright (C) 1997 - 2002, Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura,
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The names of its contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❑ zlib

http://www.zlib.net/

zlib.h -- interface of the 'zlib' general purpose compression library version 1.2.3, July 18th, 2005

Copyright (C) 1995-2004 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly jloup@gzip.org, Mark Adler madler@alumni.caltech.edu

❑ cURL

http://curl.haxx.se

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2011, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

❑ c-ares

http://c-ares.haxx.se

Copyright 1998 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

License Information for the Software Used in the Unit

About GPL (GNU-General Public License), LGPL (GNU Lesser General Public License) License

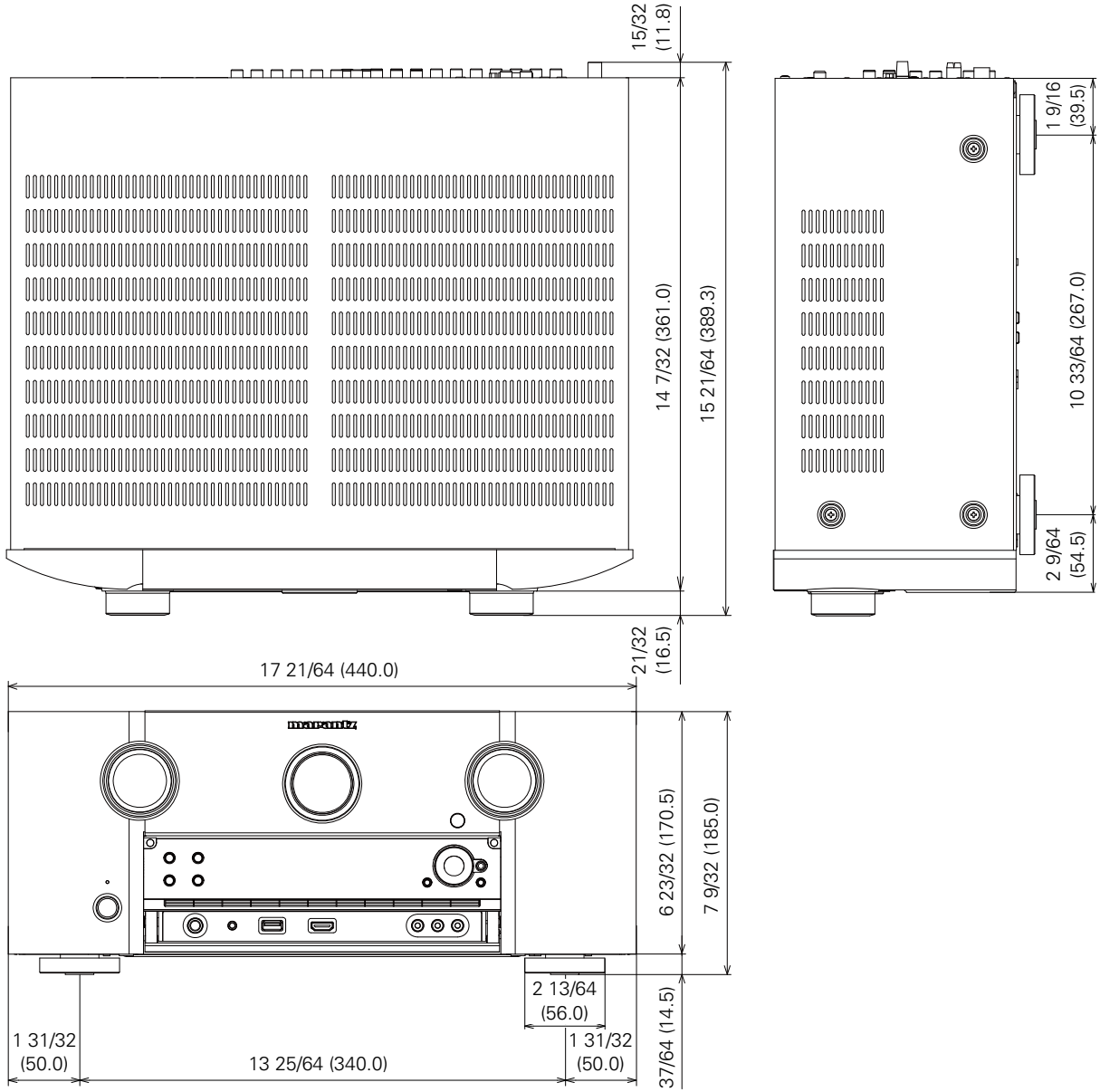
This product uses GPL/LGPL software and software made by other companies.

After you purchase this product, you may procure, modify or distribute the source code of the GPL/LGPL software that is used in the product.

marantz provides the source code based on the GPL and LPGL licenses at the actual cost upon your request to our customer service center. However, note that we make no guarantees concerning the source code. Please also understand that we do not offer support for the contents of the source code.

Dimensions

Unit : in. (mm)



Weight : 21 lbs 9 oz (9.8 kg)

www.marantz.com

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.

marantz® is a registered trademark.

V00

D&M Holdings Inc.
3520 10192 00AM